

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08191534 4

Digitized for Microsoft Corporation
by the Internet Archive in 2008.

From New York Public Library.

May be used for non-commercial, personal, research,
or educational purposes, or any fair use.

May not be indexed in a commercial service.



From the portrait by Healy

JOHN C. CALHOUN

Digitized by Microsoft®

STORIES OF THE STATES

344
THE MAKING
OF
SOUTH CAROLINA

BY
HENRY ALEXANDER WHITE, M.A., PH.D., D.D.

PROFESSOR IN COLUMBIA THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY, COLUMBIA,
SOUTH CAROLINA; AUTHOR OF "LIFE OF ROBERT
E. LEE," AND "A SCHOOL HISTORY OF
THE UNITED STATES."

WITH MANY ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS

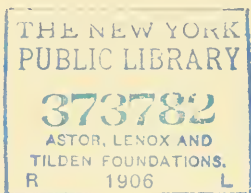


SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY
NEW YORK ATLANTA BOSTON DALLAS CHICAGO

Digitized by Microsoft®

Checked

Mar 1913



COPYRIGHT, 1906, BY
SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

This Book is Dedicated to

My Wife

FANNY BEVERLEY WELLFORD WHITE

PREFACE.

THIS book attempts to give a short, simple history of South Carolina from the first settlement to the present day. Biographical sketches of rulers and leaders are arranged in close connection in order to furnish a continuous historical narrative. The story of the lives of many great and good men of the state is of necessity left out; the boys and girls of South Carolina must read about them in larger books than this.

Many worthy and noble women have also helped to build up and strengthen the state of South Carolina. In Colonial and Revolutionary days, and most of all during the period of the Southern Confederacy, they toiled and suffered in behalf of their people. It is not possible, however, in these brief pages to give the story of their deeds of devotion and self-sacrifice.

The statements made in this book are based throughout on public records and on the original writings of those who had a share in the events and deeds herein described.

The author desires to express his great appreciation of the valuable assistance rendered in the preparation of this volume by Mr. Alexander S. Salley, Jr., Secre-

tary of the State Historical Commission, who has furnished much important information and has facilitated the securing of autographs of important men directly from the original documents. In addition to this, Mr. Salley has kindly aided in the laborious work of reading the proof-sheets, and has also lent some photographs for reproduction in this book. Hon. W. A. Courtenay, of Innisfallen, who has done so much to perpetuate the true history of this state, has read the proof-sheets and has furnished some photographs from his valuable collection. Acknowledgments are due also to Mr. E. S. Dreher, Superintendent of the Public Schools of Columbia, who has read the proof-sheets; to Prof. Yates Snowden, of the University of South Carolina, who has read the proof-sheets in part, and has furnished photographs; to Mr. W. Hampton Gibbes, of Columbia, who has placed at the author's disposal his collection of autographs; and to Mr. E. J. Watson, Secretary of the Immigration Commission, who has lent several photographs.

A number of friends in various parts of the state have rendered assistance in securing photographs and other material for illustrating the book. For all of these courtesies the author hereby expresses his grateful appreciation.

HENRY ALEXANDER WHITE.

COLUMBIA, SOUTH CAROLINA.

CONTENTS

PART I. — EARLY DAYS IN SOUTH CAROLINA

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. THE HUGUENOT SETTLEMENT AT PORT ROYAL	1
II. THE LORDS PROPRIETORS OF CAROLINA	4
III. THE ENGLISH SETTLEMENT ON ASHLEY RIVER	8
IV. JOSEPH WEST AND THE NEW CHARLES TOWN	11
V. THE MORTON SETTLEMENT ON THE EDISTO RIVER	17
VI. THOMAS SMITH AND THE GROWTH OF TRADE	20
VII. BLAKE AND THE HUGUENOTS	22
VIII. JAMES MOORE AND THE SPANIARDS OF FLORIDA	27
IX. SOUTH CAROLINA INVADDED BY THE FRENCH AND SPANISH	30
X. CHARLES CRAVEN DEFEATS THE YEMASSEES	33
XI. HOW THE CAROLINIANS FOUGHT THE PIRATES	39
XII. PROPRIETARY GOVERNMENT OVERTHROWN	44
XIII. SCOTCH, WELSH, AND GERMAN SETTLERS IN SOUTH CAROLINA	47
XIV. THE PEOPLE OF SOUTH CAROLINA MAKE THEIR OWN MONEY LAWS	52
XV. THE CULTIVATION OF THE INDIGO PLANT	54
XVI. TREATIES WITH THE INDIANS OF THE UPPER COUNTRY	58
XVII. PATRICK CALHOUN, THE FIRST LAWMAKER FROM THE UPPER COUNTRY	62

PART II. — SOUTH CAROLINA'S PART IN THE REVOLUTION

CHAPTER	PAGE
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XVIII. THE GROWTH OF THE TRADE OF SOUTH CARO- LINA. 68 </div>	68
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XIX. OPPOSITION TO THE STAMP ACT 74 </div>	74
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XX. THE "LIBERTY TREE" PARTY 80 </div>	80
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXI. PREPARING FOR WAR 84 </div>	84
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXII. JOHN RUTLEDGE, FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE IN- DEPENDENT STATE OF SOUTH CAROLINA 89 </div>	89
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXIII. WILLIAM HENRY DRAYTON, FIRST CHIEF JUSTICE OF THE INDEPENDENT STATE OF SOUTH CARO- LINA. 92 </div>	92
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXIV. MOULTRIE'S DEFENCE OF CHARLES TOWN 96 </div>	96
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXV. WILLIAM THOMSON DEFENDS CHARLES TOWN AGAINST A BRITISH ARMY 101 </div>	101
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXVI. ANDREW WILLIAMSON DEFEATS THE CHEROKEE INDIANS 105 </div>	105
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXVII. HENRY LAURENS, PRESIDENT OF THE CONTINEN- TAL CONGRESS 108 </div>	108
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXVIII. JOHN LAURENS AT SAVANNAH AND YORKTOWN 112 </div>	112
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXIX. THE BRITISH ARMY DRIVEN OUT OF NORTHERN SOUTH CAROLINA 117 </div>	117
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXX. FRANCIS MARION IN THE PEE DEE COUNTRY 126 </div>	126
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXXI. THOMAS SUMTER AGAIN FORCES THE BRITISH FROM THE UPPER COUNTRY 137 </div>	137
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXXII. ANDREW PICKENS HELPS TO DEFEAT THE BRITISH 144 </div>	144
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXXIII. SOUTH CAROLINA BECOMES A STATE IN THE UNION 154 </div>	154

PART III. — THE MEN OF THE COMMONWEALTH

<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXXIV. THOMAS PINCKNEY AS MINISTER TO ENGLAND 161 </div>	161
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXXV. WILLIAM LOWNDES, THE WISE STATESMAN 169 </div>	169
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXXVI. LANGDON CHEVES, LAWMAKER, JUDGE, AND BANKER 174 </div>	174
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> XXXVII. GEORGE MCDUFFIE'S OPPOSITION TO UNJUST FEDERAL LAWS 179 </div>	179

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXVIII. ROBERT YONGE HAYNE IN THE UNITED STATES SENATE	185
XXXIX. JOHN CALDWELL CALHOUN'S SERVICE TO HIS COUNTRY.	188
XL. PIERCE M. BUTLER AND THE PALMETTO REGIMENT IN THE MEXICAN WAR	206
XLI. J. MARION SIMMS, THE GREAT SURGEON	210

PART IV. — MEN OF THE CONFEDERATE WAR

XLII. FRANCIS W. PICKENS, FIRST CONFEDERATE WAR GOVERNOR OF SOUTH CAROLINA	216
XLIII. MILLEDGE L. BONHAM, SECOND CONFEDERATE WAR GOVERNOR OF SOUTH CAROLINA	224
XLIV. MAXCY GREGG'S BRIGADE	231
XLV. SAMUEL MCGOWAN'S BRIGADE	239
XLVI. JOSEPH B. KERSHAW'S BRIGADE	244
XLVII. MICAH JENKINS' BRIGADE	250
XLVIII. NATHAN G. EVANS' BRIGADE	254
XLIX. THE BRIGADES OF MANIGAULT AND GIST IN THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY	257
I. WADE HAMPTON AND THE CAROLINA HORSEMEN IN THE CONFEDERATE WAR	261
LI. JOHNSON HAGOOD'S BRIGADE	279
LII. SIMMS, HAYNE, TIMROD, — POETS OF CAROLINA AND OF THE SOUTH	282

PART V. — THE MEN OF OUR OWN TIME

LIII. WADE HAMPTON BRINGS SOUTH CAROLINA AGAIN UNDER THE RULE OF WHITE MEN	290
LIV. THE SOUTH CAROLINA OF TO-DAY	298
APPENDIX	307
INDEX	319

ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS

	PAGE		PAGE
John C. Calhoun		Plan of Charles Town	
Charles the Ninth of		(1704)	32
France	2	The Autographs and Coats-	
Charles the Second of Eng-		of-Arms of Governor	
land	4	Craven and His Council	34
Title-page of Manuscript		The Autograph and Coat-	
Volume: "Laws of the		of-Arms of Governor	
Province of South Caro-		Johnson	39
lina"	6	William Rhett	41
Anthony Ashley Cooper . .	7	George the Second of Eng-	
Marks Made by Indians as		land	48
Their Signatures to a		The Autograph of Chief	
Deed for Land	9	Justice Pinckney	52
The Autograph of Gov-		Thomas Broughton	53
ernor West	11	Charles Pinckney	56
Order Issued by Governor		The Grave of Catharine	
Yeamans (1672) to Lay		Calhoun	63
Out a Town	14	The Autograph of Patrick	
St. Michael's Church . . .	16	Calhoun	66
The Autograph of Gov-		The Autograph of Gov-	
ernor Morton	17	ernor Bull	68
Huguenot Church	18	A View of Charles Town	
The Autographs of Gov-		(1765)	72-3
ernor Smith and Colonel		Christopher Gadsden . . .	75
Daniell	20	The Autographs of Rawlins	
South Carolina Pines. . .	21	Lowndes and Christo-	
The Autographs and Coats-		pher Gadsden	76
of-Arms of Governor		George the Third of Eng-	
Archdale and His Coun-		land	78
cil	23	Thomas Lynch	81
Plan of the Town of Dor-		The Autograph of Edward	
chester	26	Rutledge	82
The Old Castle, St. Augus-		Edward Rutledge	83
tine	28	William Gibbes	85
Sir Nathaniel Johnson . .	30	Thomas Heyward, Jr. . .	86

	PAGE		PAGE
The Autograph of Thomas Heyward, Jr.	87	Charles Cotesworth Pinckney	155
The Liberty Flag	88	Fort Moultrie	156
John Rutledge	90	Thomas Pinckney	157
The Autograph of President Rutledge	91	The Autograph of Governor Pinckney	159
William Henry Drayton	93	George Washington	161
Arthur Middleton	94	The State House at Columbia in 1794	165
William Moultrie	97	The Home of William Lowndes	170
Sergeant Jasper at Fort Moultrie	99	William Lowndes	173
The Autograph of Captain Caldwell	101	Langdon Cheves	175
A Map of South Carolina in Revolutionary Days	102	Magnolia Cemetery	176
The Autograph of Colonel Thomson	104	Confederate Monument, Magnolia Cemetery	178
The Autograph of Colonel Williamson	105	George McDuffie	179
Henry Laurens	109	Library, South Carolina College	181
Pringle House, Charleston	110	Robert Yonge Hayne	186
John Laurens	113	Calhoun in Early Life	190
Charles Town in 1780	115	Calhoun in Maturity	191
Louis the Sixteenth of France	116	The Autograph of Floride Calhoun's Father	193
Colonel Banastre Tarleton	119	Calhoun Monument, Charleston	195
Thomas Sumter	121	John C. Calhoun	197
Monument Commemorating Huck's Defeat	123	Fort Hill	200
Francis Marion	126	St. Philip's Church, Charleston	202
The Battle of Camden	131	St. Philip's Church, Interior	204
The Autograph of Col. Horry	134	Mexican Monument, Columbia	207
The Battle of King's Mountain	140	J. Marion Sims	212
Andrew Pickens	144	The Autograph of Doctor Sims	213
Old Stone Presbyterian Church, Oconee County	146	Country House of John L. Manning	215
Daniel Morgan	147	Francis W. Pickens	217
The Autograph of Henry Hampton	149	First Baptist Church, Columbia	218
The First Wade Hampton	150	Francis Hugh Wardlaw	219
"Light-Horse Harry" Lee	151	Hall of the St. Andrew's Society	221
Nathanael Greene	152	Jefferson Davis	222
The Autograph of Charles C. Pinckney	154	Milledge L. Bonham	225

	PAGE		PAGE
Fort Sumter under Fire	226	Iver; General Hampton; Colonel Pope; General McGowan (Group)	270
Stephen Elliott	229	Confederate Monument, Columbia	273
Maxey Gregg	232	Columbia before Burning	276
Confederate Monument, Chester	234	Ruins of Millwood	278
Robert E. Lee	238	Johnson Hagood	280
Samuel McGowan	239	The Autograph of W. Gilmore Simms	282
Confederate Monument and Court House, Orangeburg	241	W. Gilmore Simms	283
Charleston in 1860	243	Woodlands	285
Stonewall Jackson	245	Paul Hamilton Hayne	287
Joseph B. Kershaw	246	Henry Timrod	288
Confederate Monument, Marion	248	Governor's Mansion, Columbia	291
Micah Jenkins	251	Mace in House of Representatives	292
Seven Pines Battlefield To-Day	252	The Capitol, Columbia	294
Nathan G. Evans	254	A View of Charleston	297
A. M. Manigault	257	Cotton	298
Ellison Capers	259	Olympia Cotton Mill	299
A Garden at the Home of the First Wade Hampton	262	The College of Charleston	300
Wade Hampton the Third	264	Columbia Female College	301
House Given to General Hampton by the People of South Carolina	267	Monument to William Moffatt Grier	302
Attorney-General Youmans; Chief Justice Mc-		A Group of South Carolina Educators	303
		Clemson College	304

PART I.

EARLY DAYS IN SOUTH CAROLINA.

1663-1763

CHAPTER I.

THE HUGUENOT SETTLEMENT AT PORT ROYAL.

The Huguenots. — On a bright morning in May, about three hundred and fifty years ago, two ships were sailing along our Atlantic coast, their prows headed northward. The vessels had large, square sails. Their sterns stood high above the water and from each masthead fluttered the flag of France.

The people on board the two vessels were from France, and were known as Huguenots. They were Protestants, who were not allowed to worship God in their own way in France, and for that reason they crossed the Atlantic Ocean to build homes in America.

Port Royal. — The two ships made their way into the mouth of a wide bay on the coast of the present state of South Carolina and let go their anchors in a depth of sixty feet of water. The sailors were filled with such delight when they saw the beauty of this body of water that they gave to it the name Port Royal, or royal harbor, the name by which it is called to this day.

The leader of this company was a brave Huguenot named Captain Jean Ribault (*Re-bō'*). He steered his ships up the stream that enters Port Royal and went



CHARLES THE NINTH OF FRANCE

ashore, probably upon a small island now known as Lemon Island, in Broad River, a few miles from the present town of Beaufort. There he set up a stone pillar and claimed all the country for the king of France. Ribault and his followers then built a fort upon Parris

Island and called it *Arx Carolana*, that is, Fort Charles, after King Charles (Carolus) the Ninth of France. Twenty-six men were left in the fort, and Ribault sailed away to bring a larger company of Huguenots to Port Royal.

The soil around Fort Charles was rich, but the men left in the fort did not plant corn. They found pleasure in walking about in the great forests of cedar, magnolia, and oak. They enjoyed the fragrance of the jasmine and the roses that grew upon the banks of the Broad River. They bought corn and deer meat from the Indians and spent much time in looking for silver and pearls.

Port Royal Deserted. — At last the Huguenot settlers

became anxious about Ribault. Day after day they looked out over the sea for his ship, but he did not return to them. When the supply of corn was nearly gone, the men in the fort determined to build a small boat and sail back to France. Grass and the inner bark of trees were twisted together to make ropes for the new vessel. Bedclothes and old shirts were made into sails. Then they turned the prow of the boat to the east, and a fair wind bore them far out upon the Atlantic.

Before they reached the middle of the ocean the wind ceased to fill their sails, and the little vessel was left floating idly upon the sea. The supply of food and water failed. The boat began to leak, and a storm broke upon them. Some died of hunger. An English ship by chance came that way, picked up those that were still alive and carried them to England.

Huguenot Settlement on St. John's River. — All of these events took place in the year 1562. A little later a second company of Huguenots built another Fort Charles on St. John's River in Florida. Then in 1565 Captain Ribault brought a third group of colonists to this fort on the St. John's. The Spaniards, however, killed all of the Huguenot settlers and then built the town of St. Augustine on the Florida coast, to show that they claimed that entire region. The Huguenots did not succeed in their plan of making a settlement at Port Royal. The name *Carolana*, or *Carolina*, was given,

however, to a part of the country near Port Royal. This name remained in that region for a hundred years as a memorial of the French king. Then English settlers came to take possession of the country, to build homes, and thus to lay the foundations of a great American state.

CHAPTER II.

THE LORDS PROPRIETORS OF CAROLINA.

Carolina Granted to Proprietors. — In the year 1663, Charles the Second, king of England, gave to Anthony



CHARLES THE SECOND OF ENGLAND

Ashley Cooper, Lord Ashley, and to seven other Englishmen, a large tract of land on our Atlantic coast. This contained the same land that had been called *Carolina* by the Huguenots a hundred years before, in honor of King Charles of France. It was named *Carolina* for the second time

by King Charles the Second, in honor of his father, King Charles the First, of England. The country called

Carolina then embraced all of the land now contained in the states of South Carolina, North Carolina, Georgia, and the northern part of Florida.

The eight Englishmen to whom the king gave this vast country were called the Proprietors of Carolina. The names of some of them are still in use in South Carolina. Anthony Ashley Cooper's name was given to the Ashley River and the Cooper River which flow past the city of Charleston. The names of the Earl of Clarendon and of Sir John Colleton, two of the Proprietors, were given to Clarendon and Colleton counties; the county of Berkeley was called after two other Proprietors, Sir William Berkeley and John, Lord Berkeley. The other three Proprietors were the Duke of Albemarle, the Earl of Craven, and Sir George Carteret.

The Carolina Charter. — King Charles the Second gave to his eight friends a written title to Carolina. In this writing, called a charter, the king told the Proprietors that they might do what they pleased with their land. They were allowed to bring settlers into the country, to build towns and forts, to appoint governors and judges, to levy and collect taxes, and to rule the people who came to live there.

Cooper and Locke's Form of Government. — Anthony Ashley Cooper took the lead among the Proprietors in preparing a set of rules for the management of the settlers whom he expected to send from England to Carolina. Cooper asked John Locke, an English scholar and writer,

THE
LAWS
 OF THE
PROVINCE
 OF
SOUTH CAROLINA.

IN TWO PARTS.

The First Part, containing All the PERPETUAL ACTS
 In Force and Use.

With the TITLES of such ACTS as are Repealed, Expired, or Obsolete.
 Placed in the Order of Time in which they passed.

The Second Part, containing All the TEMPORARY ACTS
 In Force and Use.

To which is added the TITLES of all the PRIVATE ACTS.

And the two CHARTERS granted by King
 CHARLES II^d to the LORDS PROPRIETORS of CAROLINA.

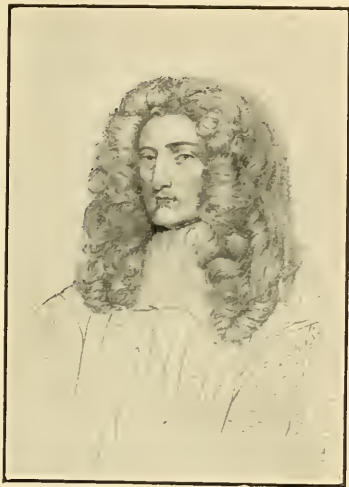
COLLECTED
 In One Volume.

By NICHOLAS TROTT, Esq;
 Chief Justice of the said Province of
 SOUTH CAROLINA.

TITLE-PAGE OF MANUSCRIPT VOLUME IN POSSESSION OF THE HISTORICAL COMMISSION, COLUMBIA. TROTT WAS CHIEF JUSTICE, 1713-1719

Digitized by Microsoft®

to help him, and working together they wrote out a long list of laws. These provided that all power should be kept in the hands of the Proprietors, and that they should be allowed to give names and titles, such as landgrave, cassique, and baron, to themselves and to their friends. This plan of government was never put into complete use in Carolina. The people who came to make homes in that land always made their own laws and never allowed



ANTHONY ASHLEY COOPER

the Proprietors to oppress them. Cooper afterwards became Earl of Shaftesbury. He felt so great an interest in the province of Carolina that he made preparations to sail across the Atlantic for the purpose of spending his last days on the banks of the Ashley and Cooper rivers. Before he could carry out this purpose he died (1683), and thus he never saw the beautiful land which he had helped to colonize.

CHAPTER III.

THE ENGLISH SETTLEMENT ON ASHLEY RIVER.

Charles Town. — In the year 1669 the Proprietors sent out from London the ship *Carolina* and two other small vessels filled with emigrants. The two small ships were wrecked during the voyage, but in March, 1670, the good ship *Carolina* sailed into the harbor of Port Royal. With her were two little boats which were carrying English settlers from the islands of Bermuda and Barbadoes (*bar-bā'-dōs*). The expedition was under the command of Joseph West. A month later, when the colonists realized that Port Royal was too near the Spaniards in Florida, they turned the prow of the *Carolina* northward, sailed into the present harbor of Charleston, and cast anchor in the mouth of the Ashley River.

The *Carolina* was then steered up the Ashley to a high bluff on the western bank, about three miles from the mouth of the stream. To this bluff the emigrants gave the name of Albemarle Point, and there, in April, 1670, they began to build a town which they called Charles Town. Colonel William Sayle, former governor of Bermuda, was made governor.

Life at Charles Town. — The settlers found themselves in a thick forest of pine, ash, live oak, magnolia, cedar, and myrtle trees. Wild cane grew in abundance near the river. The first houses were made of trunks of

small trees, which were cut the proper length and covered with bark or split boards. The settlers waded into the river and picked up plenty of oysters. All

of the great
Cassia



The mark of the next and his
great Cassia

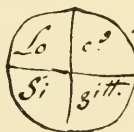


the mark of
a Cassia



his
Seal

Cassia
his



mark:
and
Seal

MARKS MADE BY INDIANS AS THEIR SIGNATURES TO
A DEED FOR LAND

around them in the forests were wild turkeys, partridges, and rabbits. These were shot and eaten. The Indian tribe known as Kiawahs lived near the Ashley. They were friendly towards the white people and brought them venison, or deer meat, and corn. Other Indians

not so friendly lived farther down the coast and against these the people had to keep watch. Some of the men paced back and forth with their rifles in their hands while the rest of the settlers were piling log upon log to make houses.

English Energy. — Governor Sayle led his people in their work of building. He made them throw up the earth as high as a man's breast around the new town. Behind this mound the riflemen stood ready to defend their homes. Some Spaniards sailed up the coast from Florida to destroy the new settlement, but when they saw the bright rifle barrels and the strong breastwork awaiting their attack they sailed back again.

Two months after the arrival of the colonists the supply of bread failed. The Indians had no more corn. Then the ship *Carolina* spread her great white wings and sailed to Virginia to buy wheat and corn. Meanwhile the settlers cut away the trees and cleared the ground for the planting of corn and other crops, so that by autumn they had grown in the fields around their log huts enough corn for their needs.

CHAPTER IV.

JOSEPH WEST AND THE NEW CHARLES TOWN.

Growth of the Colony. — When Governor Sayle died (1671) there were about four hundred people living on the western bank of the Ashley. Joseph West, an



THE AUTOGRAPH OF GOVERNOR WEST

honest Englishman, succeeded Sayle as governor of the province. The settlers were still living on deer meat, fish, and oysters, and were clearing larger fields for corn. Some of the pine, oak, and ash logs were loaded on ships and sent to the island of Barbadoes. There they were traded for guns, hoes, axes, and cloth.

New settlers came from England to the Ashley River. A number of Dutch farmers left New York and sailed southward to join the Carolina colonists. Some English people who had been living in Barbadoes also came to make their homes on the Ashley. Among these was Sir John Yeamans, an Englishman, who brought with him from Barbadoes a company of negro laborers. They were put to work cutting cedar logs and rolling them upon the vessels that lay in the river. These were the first slaves that entered the province of South Carolina.

Yeamans soon became rich by trading in cedar logs and the skins of wild animals. He built a handsome two-story wooden house on the Ashley River. For two years he held the office of governor, and then Joseph West was appointed for a second term.

The settlers now became bolder. With a rifle in one hand and an axe in the other, the pioneer went farther and farther into the forests in search of a suitable place for a home. Smoke was seen curling from cabin chimneys on both banks of the Ashley and in the woods between the Ashley and the Stono. Corn was planted in every open space found in the forest, and two crops were gathered each year.

The South Carolina Indians. — The Indians now began to make trouble for the settlers. These people of the forest were tall and straight and their skin was reddish brown, like the color of copper. About twenty-eight large families, or clans, of Indians lived in the territory of South Carolina. Two groups of these families held the upper part of the country, the Cherokees on the Broad and Saluda rivers and the Catawbans on the Wateree. The Creeks occupied the country beyond the Savannah River. Each of these groups, or tribes, has left various Indian family names connected with rivers and places in South Carolina.¹

¹ Among these names are Ashepoo, Combahee, Congaree, Coosaw, Edisto, Oconee, Saluda, Santee, Savannah, Stono, Wateree, Winyah, and Yemassee.

Indian Mode of Living. — The Indians lived chiefly on fish and game, which they killed with the bow and arrow. Their houses were rude tents called wigwams, made by setting a number of long poles in the ground and bending them together at the tops; over these was spread a covering of bark or animal skins. The Indian women planted corn, beans, melons, and squashes in small fields near the creeks and rivers.

Conflict between the Settlers and the Indians. — The Indian family known as Kussoes lived near the Combahee River. At first they were friendly to the white settlers and gave them corn and venison. In 1671, however, they stopped coming to Charles Town. At night they would creep noiselessly through the bushes to the scattered farms and carry away pigs and other property. A company of soldiers was called together in the little town on the Ashley. They were dressed in deerskin trousers and wore long hunting shirts, with a belt around the waist. Their caps were made of bear skins or raccoon skins. Their rifles were of the flint-lock kind, that is, the powder behind the bullet was ignited by means of a flint held fast in the lock of the gun. Silently and swiftly they marched away through the forest. They came so suddenly upon the villages where the Kussoes lived that the Indians could not fight well. Their arrows did little harm at a distance, while the rifles of the settlers soon forced the red men to make peace.

Carolina.

By the grand Council

You are forthwith to advertise and lay out or reserve to be laid out upon the land lying between Santee River and Wando River twelve thousand acres of land for a Colony in a square as much as exchangeable Rivers will permit, bounding the same wth the limits running directly from Cape to West and from North to South beginning upon Santee River thence the South at a place to be known by the name of the Oyster Point, and a Plot of thirty acres you are to reserve to us with all convenient speed whereof you are not to pay. Given under our hands this 22nd day of April 1672.

John Yeomans

Charles Matthews Tho: Gray
Will: Norton: John Bodley

To John Calverton
Governor of Barbadoes
or his power full Rep^y

ORDER ISSUED BY GOVERNOR YEAMANS AND COUNCIL (1672) TO LAY OUT A TOWN ON THE PRESENT SITE OF CHARLESTON

A year later a large body of Indians called the Westoes decided to make war against the new settlers. These cruel Indians lived on the coast, a few miles south of Charles Town. They were in the habit of making slaves of any other Indians whom they could catch. The men of the Westoes now painted their faces a bright red color, stuck eagle feathers in their hair, and fastened their knives and hatchets in a loose belt. The long bow was carried in the hand. Each warrior had also a bundle of arrows made of cane reed and tipped with stone points. Then they marched away from their village to hunt for the white men. They did not have a long search. Fifty soldiers went swiftly down the coast from the Ashley River. When the Westoes heard of their approach they hurried back home again. They were not willing to stand in front of the white man's rifle. Soon afterwards Dr. Henry Woodward went to the village of the Westoes and was received in a friendly manner. He puffed away at the white tobacco pipe which was handed around among the company where he met the Indian chiefs. In this way a treaty of peace was made. Then the settlers bought from the red men all the land along the coast between the Ashley and the Edisto rivers.

Charles Town Removed. — In 1672 a new town was laid out in broad streets on the point of land between the Ashley and Cooper rivers. Room for the landing of boats was left on the bank of each river. Places were marked off for a town house and a church. The

ground set apart for the latter is now occupied by St. Michael's Church. The first house of worship built



ST. MICHAEL'S CHURCH

there was of black cypress wood resting upon a brick foundation. It was called the English, or Episcopal, Church. In 1680 the settlement called Charles Town was formally removed by Governor West to its present location. At that time there were about twelve hundred people in the province. A ship-load of Huguenots came the same year (1680) and built homes in the new town.

CHAPTER V.

MORTON SETTLEMENT ON THE EDISTO RIVER.

The Coming of Dissenters. — In the year 1681 about five hundred English settlers came in a body to the Carolina coast. Their leader was Joseph Morton. In religion they were known as Dissenters, that is, they worshipped God in their own way and refused to become members of the Church of England (Episcopal Church). Most of these colonists built homes on the banks of the Edisto River, south of Charles Town.


 A handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "Joseph Morton". The signature is written in dark ink and is positioned to the right of the main text block.

THE AUTOGRAPH OF GOVERNOR MORTON

In 1682 the Proprietors made Joseph Morton governor of the colony. Settlers were now coming in large numbers from England, Ireland, and Barbadoes to live in Charles Town. Nearly all of these new colonists were Dissenters in religion, like those who came with Morton. At the close of the year 1682 there were about twenty-five hundred people living in Charles Town and along the coast southward as far as the Edisto.

The Colony in 1682. — In this same year the province was divided into three counties. These were Berkeley, which embraced Charles Town, Craven to the northward, and Colleton to the southward. The body of law-

makers, called Parliament, was made up of twenty representatives chosen by the people. In the elections the people cast their votes by means of written ballots. The Parliament made laws to keep order and to



HUGUENOT CHURCH, BUILT ABOUT 1848 ON THE SITE OF THE
FIRST HUGUENOT CHURCH

punish crime. All the colonists were required by law to observe the Sabbath day.

The Scots at Port Royal. — The year 1683 marked the coming of a number of Scots to Port Royal. Their leader was Lord Cardross, to whom the Proprietors had

given a large tract of land. He expected to bring as many as ten thousand settlers from Scotland. The first emigrants built homes and planted crops. Three years later (1686), however, a force of Spaniards sailed up the coast from Florida to the Edisto. There they robbed the houses of Governor Morton and other colonists. The Spaniards then sailed to Port Royal and completely destroyed the settlement made by the Scots.

A Second Migration of Huguenots. — From the year 1685 onward a number of Huguenots came from France to Carolina. Some of them established homes on the Cooper River, in a locality known as Orange Quarter. Others formed a settlement on Goose Creek, a branch of the Cooper River. Still another body of them made a settlement north of Charles Town, on the southern bank of the Santee River.

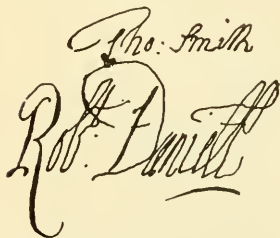
The first Huguenot congregation was organized in Charles Town in 1685, under the pastoral care of Elias Prioleau. Their first house of worship was built in that city about 1687. The present church, on the same site, is the only distinctive Huguenot Church in the United States.

The Colony Called South Carolina. — James Colleton, who succeeded Morton as governor (1686), tried to take all the power into his own hands, but the settlers drove him away. While Philip Ludwell was ruling the colony (1691-93), men began to give the name of South Carolina to the settlement of which Charles Town was the center.

CHAPTER VI.

THOMAS SMITH AND THE GROWTH OF TRADE.

Thomas Smith Appointed Governor. — When Thomas Smith, an Englishman, came to Carolina in 1684, he built a house on Back River, near Charles Town. The Proprietors wished to show him special honor, and they therefore gave him the title of landgrave. Along with the title they bestowed upon him a tract of forty-eight thousand acres of land. In 1693 they made him



THE AUTOGRAPHS OF GOVERNOR SMITH AND COLONEL DANIELL

governor of South Carolina. He took much interest in the laws that were made for the government of the colony. By his advice the people began to select men to serve on juries in the law courts in the same way in which they are selected at the present time.

Rice had been planted in the province from the first; about this time it became the chief product of South Carolina.

Exports. — From the very beginning of the province, the people of South Carolina were engaged in sending the products of their forests and of their soil across the sea. The swamps and forests of the province contained large numbers of deer. The Indians killed the deer and sold their skins to the settlers at Charles Town. The beaver and the otter and other fur-bearing animals were

found along the rivers and creeks. The red men caught these animals in traps, and sold their furs to the colonists. Many of the early settlers at Charles Town gained great wealth in the business of buying furs from the Indians and selling them again at a large profit to merchants in England.

The region near the coast of South Carolina, as we have seen, contained great forests of pine, oak, and cedar. These furnished many articles of trade that were sent away by the shipload. Pitch and tar were sent to England. Oak boards, pine shingles, and tar were sent to the West Indies. Trading ships rapidly multiplied in Charles Town Harbor, until



SOUTH CAROLINA PINES

there came to be a great fleet of vessels regularly engaged in the trade with England, the West Indies, Barbadoes, and the American colonies on the Atlantic coast.

The cattle and hogs which were brought to the colony by the first settlers increased in number very rapidly. They

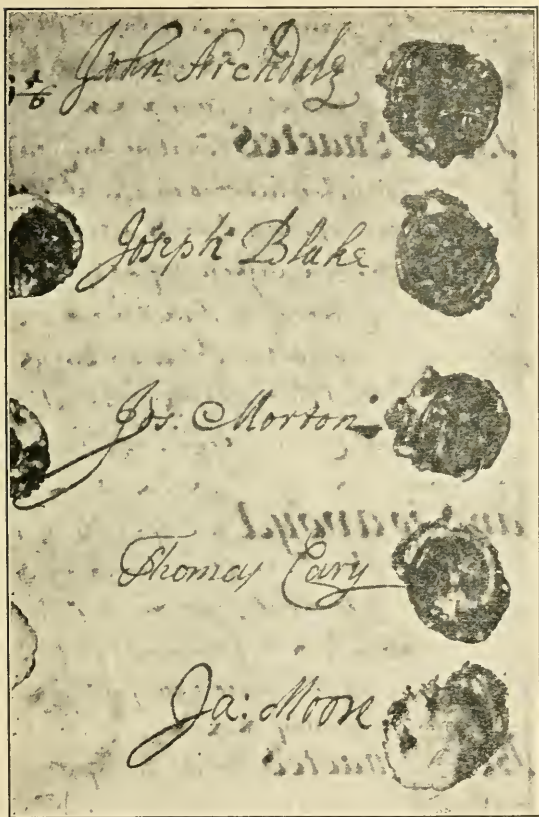
found food in the canebrakes and in the forest. Large numbers of both hogs and cattle ran wild in the woods. These were killed and sent away in the trading vessels to be sold in the West Indies. When the rice crop was added to all of these other articles of trade, the South Carolina people became very prosperous, and some of them became very rich.

Slaves Used in Raising Rice. — Rice was planted in the deep, wet soil of the swamps. It was found that white men lost their health if they tried to work in the swamp lands. Negroes from Africa, however, were able to work in the rice fields without any injury to themselves. For this reason large numbers of negroes were brought from Africa to South Carolina. Without their help the rice could not have been cultivated.

CHAPTER VII.

BLAKE AND THE HUGUENOTS.

Failure of Proprietary Government. — That body of men known as the Proprietors of Carolina did not know how to rule a community of settlers in a new country. Further than this, they were selfish men and wished to get as much money as possible out of the settlers. Some of the governors whom the Proprietors sent out were selfish and unjust, and tried to oppress the people. The colonists in South Carolina always knew how to uphold their rights and made



THE AUTOGRAPHS AND COATS-OF-ARMS OF GOVERNOR
ARCHDALE AND HIS COUNCIL

the path of an unjust ruler very difficult for him. Some of the governors, however, were honest and capable men. Among this latter class was John Archdale, the Quaker, who held the governorship after Thomas Smith. He

reduced the price of land that was sold to the settlers and made provision for the support of the poor.

Governor Blake. — Archdale was succeeded in the office of governor by the worthy and honest Joseph Blake. The latter was in control of the affairs of the colony for about four years, from 1696 until 1700.

When Blake came into the office of governor there were many Huguenots living in four separate places in South Carolina: (1) in Charles Town; (2) on the eastern branch of the Cooper River; (3) on Goose Creek, and (4) on the Santee River. They were quiet, temperate, hard-working people. The sufferings through which they had passed had increased their Christian faith. Nearly all of them were poor and the men and their wives, therefore, worked together in cutting down trees, building houses, and making the land ready for planting seed. Some of them burned tar for market. Some tried to make wine and olive oil and others attempted to make silk. Those Huguenots who knew how to work at a trade found employment in Charles Town. By industry and honesty most of these French Protestants soon became prosperous.

The Huguenots Granted a Voice in the Government. — The Huguenots continued for many years to speak and write French, the language which they had known in their native land. Their ministers preached in the same tongue. For this reason they were at first treated as foreigners and not allowed to cast a vote or

to send representatives to sit among the lawmakers at Charles Town. But in 1697, during the rulership of Governor Blake, the Huguenots were given full rights as citizens. The French Protestants won these rights and privileges by the nobility of their lives, in spite of the fact that they had not yet learned to speak the English language.

Dorchester Founded by Settlers from Massachusetts. — The year before this act of justice to the Huguenots (1696) an entire church congregation came from the colony of Massachusetts to South Carolina. In religious faith they were known as Congregationalists. They built a small town or village, called Dorchester, near the headwaters of the Ashley River, and not far from the location of the present Summerville.

Charles Town in the Year 1700. — In the year 1700, near the close of Blake's administration, there were about six thousand white settlers living in South Carolina. A small number dwelt on the Edisto and on the Santee, but the great body of this population was established in and around Charles Town. The town was then located between the bay and the present Meeting Street. The only public buildings were the churches. These were St. Philip's Episcopal Church, located where St. Michael's now stands, the Huguenot Church, the Independent Church, and the Baptist Church. The principal street then was the present Church Street. The dwelling houses were made of both wood and brick. Some



of the houses facing the bay had private wharves for boats at the water's edge. A line of boards or palisades ran around the town. Six small forts were built for defence, and cannon were placed in position to fire upon ships approaching from the ocean. A road called the Broad Path ran out of the town up the center of the narrow neck of land between the rivers. Governor Archdale said that this highway was so beautiful and so full of delight all the year with fragrant trees and flowers, that he believed that no prince in Europe with all his art could make so pleasant a sight.

CHAPTER VIII.

JAMES MOORE AND THE SPANIARDS OF FLORIDA.

Governor Moore. — Near the close of the year 1700 Governor Blake died, and James Moore was chosen governor and began to manage the affairs of the colony. Moore lived on a beautiful plantation on the Cooper River, just above Charles Town. He was a successful trader with the Indians; that is, he bought animal skins from them and sold them in England. In 1691 he made a journey of six hundred miles into the mountains west of Charles Town in search of gold and silver mines. No such mines, however, were ever opened.

War between the English and the Spaniards. — A great war began in Europe in 1702, known as Queen

Anne's War. The Spaniards and the French were fighting together on the one side against the English on the other side. At once the people of South Carolina made up their minds to help the mother country, England, by making war against the Spaniards in Florida. The Carolinians had, also, the additional reason for march-



THE OLD CASTLE, ST. AUGUSTINE

ing into Florida, that the Spaniards of that region had twice already attacked the Carolina settlements.

The South Carolinians Attack St. Augustine. — In the month of September, 1702, a body of six hundred men from South Carolina met at Port Royal. They were armed with flint-lock rifles and wore garments made of deer and bear skins. An equal number

of friendly Indians joined the white men. Ten sailing vessels were waiting for them in the harbor. Most of the soldiers went on board the vessels; the sails were spread and the little army, under the command of Governor James Moore, went southward to attack the Spanish town of St. Augustine. Some of the white men and Indians marched by land, under Col. Robert Daniell, to help Governor Moore.

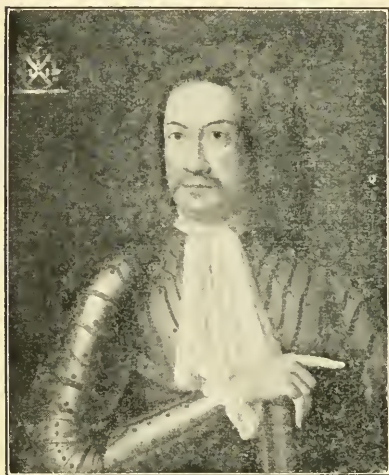
The Carolinians went ashore from their boats, made a rush into St. Augustine, and captured the town without difficulty. Governor Moore went into the Spanish church and made that his headquarters. He then ordered his soldiers to take the strong fort known as the Castle. This was surrounded by a deep ditch which was filled with water. The soldiers started to attack the Castle, but they soon found that they could not cross the ditch. Then they said, "We must have some heavy cannon to batter down the walls." Colonel Daniell sailed away to the island of Jamaica to get some cannon. Before he returned, two Spanish war vessels appeared on the ocean outside of the harbor of St. Augustine. Governor Moore was obliged to leave his own ships and return by land to Charles Town.

In December, 1703, Governor Moore marched again with an army into the country near St. Augustine to punish the Appalachian Indians for helping the Spaniards. He destroyed five Indian towns, burned their corn, and carried off a large number of captives.

CHAPTER IX.

SOUTH CAROLINA INVADED BY THE FRENCH AND SPANISH.

Governor Johnson. — During the period from 1702 until 1710 Sir Nathaniel Johnson was governor of South Carolina. In earlier life he was an English soldier and also a member of the English Parliament. When he



*From what is probably the first portrait
ever painted in South Carolina*

SIR NATHANIEL JOHNSON

came to South Carolina he obtained a plantation on the neck of land between the Wando and Cooper rivers. There he found many mulberry trees. He therefore brought a large number of silk worms and placed them upon the trees. The silk worms ate the leaves of the mulberry and formed them into balls of fine thread, called cocoons. Sir Nathaniel Johnson took these cocoons and made silk from them. He called his plantation Silk Hope. He made a large sum of money each year from the sale of the silk.

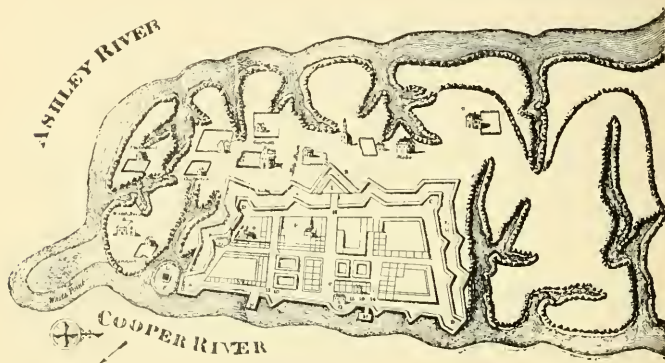
When Johnson was appointed governor by the Proprietors in 1703, he began to build defences around Charles Town. The town was surrounded by a fortification consisting of a number of forts called bastions, connected with one another by a wooden wall and a deep ditch of water. Eighty-three big guns, or cannon, were placed in position to fire at any foe that might approach the town. A three-cornered fort containing thirty heavy guns was built on Windmill Point, near the entrance of the harbor. From that time onward Windmill Point was called Fort Johnson, in honor of the man who built the fort there.

Charles Town Attacked by the French and the Spanish.

— In 1706, while yellow fever was raging like a pestilence in Charles Town, the French and the Spanish sailed from the West Indies with five war ships to capture the town. When these vessels were seen just outside of the harbor, drums were beaten and signal guns were fired in Charles Town. The settlers came rushing in from the neighboring country, and Governor Johnson put a rifle into the hands of every man who was able to carry it.

Two days later the five war vessels crossed the outer bar with all sails set. The wind and the tide brought them swiftly towards the town, but when the French commander saw heavy guns in position and the Carolinians behind the guns ready to fire, he turned about and anchored his vessels near Sullivan's Island, not far from the mouth of the harbor.

Col. William Rhett, a bold seaman, was now asked to take part in the affair. He made ready six small sailing vessels, by mounting some cannon on their decks. Rhett then sailed toward the mouth of the harbor to give battle to the enemy. The latter raised their anchors



From a survey made in 1704

PLAN OF CHARLES TOWN

and made their way quickly outside into the open sea and sailed southward. Rhett followed in pursuit of them, and a few days later captured one of the French war vessels. Thus failed the first attempt made by a fleet of war ships to take the beautiful city by the sea. The courage of the Carolinians directed by Governor Johnson and Col. Rhett saved Charles Town from the French and Spanish.

An Established Church. — After driving away the French, Governor Johnson turned his attention to reli-

gious affairs in the colony. A law was passed to the effect that the Episcopal Church and its clergymen should be supported as they were before, by taxes paid by all the people. At the same time it was agreed that any person in the colony might continue his membership in any church that he preferred, and might worship God in any way that he wished. South Carolina was divided into ten parishes, and it was determined that a church should be built in each parish. The London Society for the Propagation of the Gospel in foreign countries sent out a number of ministers to the colony.

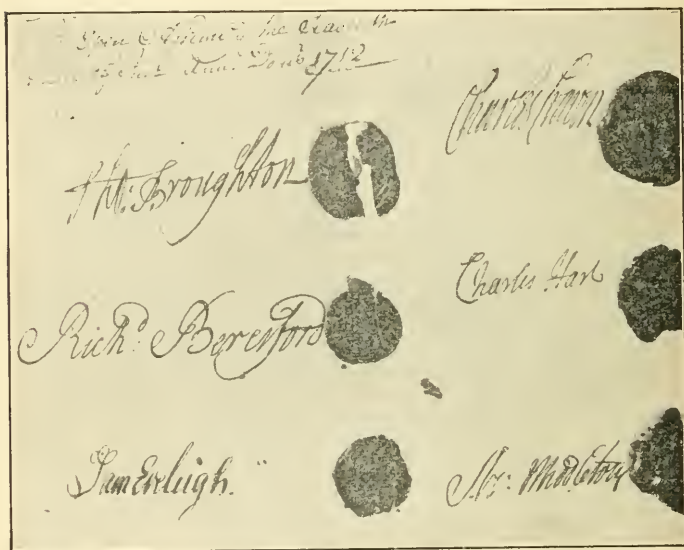
CHAPTER X.

CHARLES CRAVEN DEFEATS THE YEMASSEES.

The Tuscaroras Subdued by Barnwell. — The Tuscaroras were a cruel, warlike tribe of Indians who lived in North Carolina. They fell suddenly upon the settlers in that colony, and murdered more than two hundred of them (1711). The people of South Carolina at once offered to help their brethren in the neighboring colony.

Col. John Barnwell marched into North Carolina with a body of South Carolina riflemen. A number of friendly Indians were in his little army. He drove the Tuscaroras into one of their towns near the Neuse River, and at the muzzle of the rifle made them agree to live at peace with the North Carolina settlers.

Charles Craven. — From 1712 until 1716 Charles Craven was governor of South Carolina. He showed great wisdom and prudence in the management of public affairs and won the good will of the people. He had



THE AUTOGRAPHS AND COATS-OF-ARMS OF GOVERNOR CRAVEN AND HIS COUNCIL

a law passed imposing a fine upon every person who failed to attend religious worship on Sunday.

The Tuscarora Uprising of 1713. — The Tuscarora Indians did not long keep the peace in North Carolina. They began again to murder settlers and to burn their homes. Governor Craven sent a body of white men and

friendly Indians, commanded by James Moore, a son of the former governor of that name. Moore marched northward to the Tar River, and completely defeated the Tuscaroras. Those that were left alive in this tribe of red men then left the Carolinas and joined the Iroquois Indians, known as the Five Nations, in the colony of New York.

The Yemassee. — In the year 1715 the Yemassee Indians tried to destroy all of the settlers in South Carolina. These red men lived in the region near Port Royal and the lower Savannah River. For many years they had been friendly to the white colonists. The Spaniards of Florida, however, gave them guns and hatchets and knives, and persuaded them to make war against the people who were building homes upon the Indian hunting grounds.

The South Carolinians had now taken possession of nearly all of the land along the coast from Charles Town southward to Port Royal. Their log houses were standing on the banks of the Ashley, the Edisto, the Combahee, and the Coosaw. At Beaufort there was a group of homes large enough to be called a town. From Beaufort the settlers had advanced several miles up the small stream called the Pocotaligo, or Little Wood River. Here and there on the banks of this river stood little groups of log cabins, three or four in each group. Near them were great piles of logs sending up columns of smoke and flame to tell the Indian that the white man was clearing the land for the planting of corn and wheat.

Farther up and beyond the head of the Pocotaligo River was the chief town of the Yemassees.

The Yemassee Uprising of 1715. — In the early spring of 1715, when the white man's axe was heard ringing in the forests, the Yemassees met together and decided to have war. All of the other Indians in Carolina sent them promises of help. The warriors painted their faces, loaded their Spanish muskets, and sharpened their tomahawks, as their little hatchets were called.

At the break of day, on the 15th of April, 1715, the Indians began their bloody work. They entered the house of every white settler on the Pocotaligo, and killed every person whom they could find. Ninety men, women, and children were slain near that stream. One hundred men were put to death near Port Royal. Then the red savages rushed up the coast toward Charles Town, killing settlers and burning their houses as they went.

The Indians stopped at the Stono River, for Governor Craven was coming to meet them with a force of two hundred and fifty men, some of whom were on horseback. The Indians had the larger number of warriors, but they were not ready to meet Craven in open battle. They retreated before him down the coast. He marched to the Combahee River and went into camp for the night. The Indian town was just sixteen miles away. The Carolinians lay down to rest in the tall grass. Just at daybreak a band of five hundred Yemassees rushed

upon them. The whizzing of arrows and the loud reports of muskets were mingled with the wild yells of the warriors. Craven was very calm and cool. He placed his men behind trees. When the sharp crack of their rifles rang out many of the Indian leaders fell and the rest fled away.

Meanwhile another body of riflemen had come by water from Charles Town to Port Royal. They sailed up the Pocotaligo, went ashore, and rushed into the chief town of the Yemassee. Some of the Indians took refuge in a fort. A young Carolinian named Palmer with sixteen men climbed over the wall of the fort, entered the ditches inside, drove the red men out and shot them as they ran.

From the northern part of the colony a body of four hundred Indians marched towards Charles Town. The smoke of burning houses and the cries of dying men and women marked the line of their advance down the bank of the Cooper River.

Ninety horsemen rode out to check them, but the horsemen were defeated and many of them were slain. Then, more than one hundred white men and negroes built a fort and tried to stop the Indians. The savages captured the fort and killed nearly all of those within it. A great company of men, women, and children was fleeing for safety towards the town between the Ashley and Cooper. Captain Chicken led a force of riflemen to meet the savages when they were near

Charles Town. Long and steadily the fight went on. The Indian arrows were well directed. The day was hot, for the battle was fought in June. The aim of the Carolinians was better than that of the red men, and at last the latter were forced to retreat.

The danger was still very great. The Yemassees had sent messengers to the other Indian families in both Carolinas. Each of these messengers carried a "bloody stick" as a sign that the time had come to go to war. Throughout the whole coast country the Indians painted their faces and seized their weapons. Ten thousand red warriors from all the Carolinian tribes were ready to attack the settlers. To meet them, Craven armed every colonist who could carry a rifle. He found that only twelve hundred men could be brought into the field. A few soldiers came from North Carolina and Virginia to help him. Near the close of the year 1715 the Yemassees began again to burn and murder. Craven led his army southward across the Edisto to meet them. Slowly and cautiously he advanced through the forests until he reached the Indian camp. Suddenly the savages let fly their arrows and fired their muskets from the midst of a thicket of bushes. At the same time they kept up a fierce shouting and yelling. Craven's men continued to move forward from tree to tree, taking careful aim with their rifles at each halting-place. The battle was fierce. Many of the Indians were shot down. At last the great body of red men ran away

from the field of battle and crossed the Savannah River. The Carolinians pursued them far down into the country held by the Spaniards. Four hundred settlers had lost their lives during this struggle with the savage foe, but the colony was saved.

CHAPTER XI.

HOW THE CAROLINIANS FOUGHT THE PIRATES.

Governor Johnson. — While Robert Johnson, son of Nathaniel Johnson, was governor of South Carolina (1717--1719), his most important public work was the defence of the col-

ony against pirates. These were English, French, and Spanish sailors who became



THE AUTOGRAPH AND COAT-OF-ARMS OF
GOVERNOR JOHNSON

sea-robbers. They sailed up and down the entire Atlantic coast, from New England to Georgia. They had swift ships with cannon mounted on the decks. Their crews were made up of thieves and cutthroats armed with knives, swords, pistols, and muskets. They stopped trading vessels on the sea and took away all the money and goods that they could find on board. Sometimes they murdered the crew of the ship that they seized.

Blackbeard. — One of the most wicked of the pirate

captains was called Blackbeard, and he sailed the ocean in a large war ship armed with forty big cannon. He captured three other ships and took them with him as pirate vessels. With his fleet of four armed ships and four hundred men on board, Blackbeard sailed to Charles Town. He waited just outside the harbor and captured eight or nine vessels as they sailed out. A number of the citizens of Charles Town thus fell into his hands. The cruel Blackbeard then sent a message to the governor and the people of Charles Town that he wanted medicines and other supplies. He said that if these were not sent out to him, he would send into the city the heads of the Charles Town prisoners. The medicines were sent to him and the captives were sent ashore. Soon afterwards the fierce old robber was captured and slain near the coast of North Carolina.

The Pirate Bonnet. — Another cruel robber who made his home on the sea was named Stede Bonnet. He was an Englishman who once lived on a farm on the island of Barbadoes. He bought a ship and named her the *Revenge*, and with a crew of seventy men as wicked as himself, started out on the ocean to kill and to steal. At first Bonnet sailed northward and captured vessels along the coasts of Virginia, New York, and New England. He sailed again into the southern seas and there joined forces with Blackbeard. The two wild robbers had a quarrel, however, and parted company. Bonnet secured a new crew of thieves, renamed his vessel the

Royal James, and spread terror along the sea coast as far northward as Delaware Bay. He there captured two vessels and brought them southward to the Cape Fear River.

The South Carolinians had now made up their minds to capture Bonnet. Governor Johnson put two vessels in fighting trim and placed them under the command of Col. William Rhett. Upon one of them were eight cannon and seventy men; upon the other, eight cannon and sixty men. Rhett spread his sails and moved up the coast in search of the pirate. One day about sunset Rhett's two ships ran into the mouth of the Cape Fear River. At the same time



From a portrait in pastel

WILLIAM RHETT

Rhett caught sight of the topmasts of Bonnet's three vessels some distance up the river. On both sides the crews spent the entire night in getting ready for a fight to the death.

At sunrise the next morning the sails of the *Royal James* were spread, and the pirate ship came flying down the river before the breeze. Bonnet's idea was to run past Rhett's vessels and enter the open sea. Rhett saw this plan and at once steered his boats up the stream to meet Bonnet. The pirate was forced to go near the shore and there ran aground. At the same time both of Rhett's ships became stuck in the sandy bottom of the channel. One of these was too far out of range to take part in the fight. With only one small vessel Rhett began the battle against the larger pirate ship. His men stood bravely to their guns and the ten cannon poured a continual fire into the *Royal James*. Rhett's riflemen with careful aim picked off the pirate gunners one by one. But the deck of Rhett's vessel was swept by the pirate's guns and the fierce old Bonnet thought at first that he would win. His wild crew waved their hats in a taunting way and called to the Carolinians to come on board. The latter answered with defiant cheers. The great guns continued to roar and many fell on both sides. Thus the fearful battle went on for five hours.

At last the tide from the ocean began to creep up the river. Both parties were anxious. The advantage would fall to that vessel which was the first to float. The rising waters swept higher and higher around them. The Carolinian boat was the first in motion and she sailed straight towards the *Royal James*. Bonnet stood upon his deck with pistols drawn, threatening to shoot

any one of his own men who should refuse to keep up the fight. But the pirate crew threw down their arms and yielded. When Bonnet and his men were taken to Charles Town they were tried and found guilty of murder. They were all executed by hanging on the great wharf at the edge of Charles Town Harbor.

Other Pirates. — Soon after Rhett's victory, two pirate ships commanded by Richard Worley appeared at the mouth of Charles Town Harbor. Governor Johnson armed four vessels with heavy guns and sailed out just at dawn one morning in November, 1718. When he crossed the bar to the waters of the ocean the battle began. The two pirate ships were separated from each other. One of them was attacked by two of Johnson's smaller vessels. The fighting was kept up for four hours at close range. The Carolinians at last ran very close to the vessel of the robbers, leaped on board, and captured the crew at the point of the sword. The other pirate ship tried to escape, but Johnson himself sailed in pursuit. The chase continued until the middle of the afternoon, when Johnson came near enough to open fire. His cannon-shot raked the deck of the enemy so well that the robbers hauled down their black flag and surrendered. Worley, the pirate captain, was killed in the battle. Many of his followers were slain with him. The rest were taken to Charles Town and hanged for the crime of murder.

The cost of these two expeditions against the pirates

was about fifty thousand dollars. This was laid as a debt upon the people of South Carolina. They cheerfully bore the burden in their own interest, and for the sake of the other colonies as well. The power of the sea robbers was broken by the two victories won over them by the South Carolinians.

CHAPTER XII.

PROPRIETARY GOVERNMENT OVERTHROWN.

The Proprietors Oppressive. — In 1719 a great change was made in the government of South Carolina. The chief leader of the people at that time was James Moore, who had led the expedition against the Indians of North Carolina (1713).

The chief cause of the Revolution of 1719 was the injustice shown to the settlers. The eight English Proprietors and their descendants had continued to appoint the governors of the colony. The chief aim of the Proprietors, however, was to get money out of the settlers by claiming a large rent for the use of the land on which the colonists lived. These lands were defended by the settlers in three wars against the Spaniards, the Indians, and the pirates, but the Proprietors would not help the people to pay the expenses caused by these wars. On the contrary, the Proprietors now asked four times as much money for the rental of the

land as they had asked before. They claimed, also, that the land of the Yemassee, from which the Indians had been driven by the settlers, must be bought from the Proprietors by the colonists. In addition to all these things, the Proprietors declared that they must make all the laws for the people of South Carolina.

The People Resist the Proprietors. — These claims were more than the people could bear. They resolved that they would have nothing further to do with the Proprietors. In November, 1719, three of the leaders of the people, Alexander Skene, George Logan, and William Blakewey, sent a letter to Governor Robert Johnson, telling him that the colonists had made up their minds to throw off the rule of the Proprietors, and to place themselves directly under the protection of the king of England. They asked Johnson to become their governor under the authority of the king, but he refused to do this.

James Moore Elected Governor. — On the 21st of December, 1719, the people of South Carolina came together in Charles Town. Flags were flying on the principal houses of the town and on the vessels in the harbor. The men of the colony marched along the streets with rifles in their hands. They met in a body, called themselves the Convention of the People, and declared that they would no longer obey the commands of the Proprietors. They then elected one of their own number, James Moore, to the office of governor of South

Carolina. At the same time they sent a messenger to England to tell the king what they had done.

South Carolina a Self-Governing Province. — The government of the province was now organized in the name of the king of England. The Convention of the People elected twelve men to form the council. This body was expected to advise and aid the governor. The Convention called itself an assembly or legislature, and began to appoint public officers and to make laws. The entire management of the affairs of the province was in the hands of the governor, council, and assembly, and these were all chosen by the people themselves. South Carolina was in reality a self-governing community during the entire administration of Governor Moore (1719-1721).

South Carolina Becomes a Royal Province. — When the English king and Parliament heard of it, they sanctioned all that had been done by the people of South Carolina. They said that the Proprietors had lost the right to rule the province. The king sent Sir Francis Nicholson to rule the province in his name (1721-1729). During the chief part of his governorship, however, the affairs of the colonists were managed by Arthur Middleton as president of the council. In 1729 the English government paid the Proprietors for their claim to the soil. From that time until the Revolution South Carolina was a royal province. This meant that her governors were appointed by the king.

CHAPTER XIII.

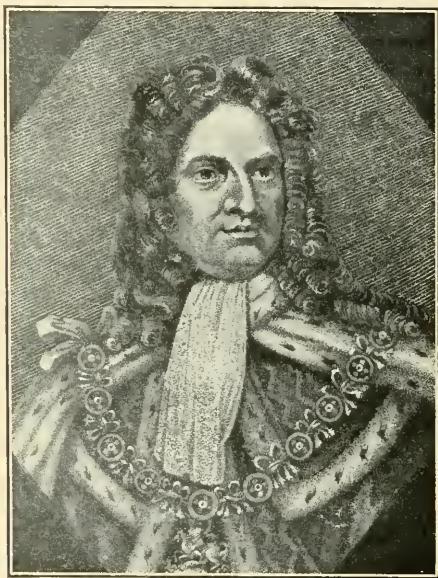
SCOTCH, WELSH, AND GERMAN SETTLERS IN SOUTH CAROLINA.

Governor Robert Johnson. — Robert Johnson, the hero of the war against the pirates, was the first royal governor after the purchase of the province from the Proprietors (1729–1735). His first council, which was appointed by the king, included William Bull, James Kinloch, Alexander Skene, John Fenwicke, Arthur Middleton, Joseph Wragg, Francis Yonge, John Ham-merton, and Thomas Waring. The people ever afterwards called him the “good governor, Robert Johnson.”

Sir Alexander Cumming. — In the very beginning of Johnson’s second administration, Sir Alexander Cumming made a treaty of peace with the Cherokees, who lived in the northwestern corner of South Carolina.

Sir Alexander set forth on horseback from Charles Town towards the country of the Cherokees. He had with him a numerous company. They all wore red coats trimmed with gold lace and had plumes in their hats. They made their way slowly through the forests until they came to Keowee, the principal Cherokee town, near the place where the courthouse of Pickens County now stands. Thirty-two Indian chiefs held a council with the Englishmen under the branches of a great tree at Keowee. The red men were dressed in bearskin cloaks,

wore strings of shells around their necks and arms, and had large eagle feathers in their hair. Sir Alexander gave many presents to the Indians, and told them about King George the Second of England. The red men



GEORGE THE SECOND OF ENGLAND

fell on their knees and promised to obey King George. Seven of the Indian chiefs went with Cumming to England, took the king by the hand, and called him "Brother George." They promised to live at peace with the English colonists "as long as the rivers shall

run, as long as the mountains shall stand." They said that they would allow the settlers to build houses and plant corn all the way from Charles Town to the great mountains. King George gave rich gifts to the Indians and sent them home again.

South Carolina in 1730. — When this treaty was made there were about fifteen thousand white settlers in South Carolina; they were all living near the sea between Port Royal and the Santee River. Most of them were in or near Charles Town. They had about twenty thousand negro laborers. Rice was raised for sale to the amount of eighteen thousand barrels each year. About fifty-two thousand barrels of pitch, tar, and turpentine and two hundred and fifty thousand deer skins were sent away annually. Raw silk, lumber, shingles, staves, and cowhides were also exported. The Carolinians were becoming prosperous from trade rather than by the growing of crops.

Governor Johnson wished to open up the way into the lands that lay at a distance from the sea. He marked off the whole colony into twelve townships and offered to give a tract of fifty acres of land to each new settler who entered the colony.

Georgia Made from South Carolina. — All that part of the territory of South Carolina lying west of the Savannah River was made into the colony of Georgia. In January, 1733, General Oglethorpe sailed into Charles Town Harbor with the first shipload of colonists who

expected to settle in Georgia. Governor Johnson and the people of Charles Town gave them welcome. Homes were thrown open to the travelers. Col. William Bull went with Oglethorpe to help him pick out a favorable place on which to build the city of Savannah. Cattle and sheep were given to the Georgians, and many men from South Carolina helped the new colonists to build houses and to plant the first crops.

The Scotch-Irish Settlement of Williamsburg. — Governor Johnson's offer of land to new settlers brought a company of Scots to South Carolina. As these Scots had been living for some years in the north of Ireland they were called Scotch-Irish. After a stormy voyage over the Atlantic they reached Charles Town. They then sailed up the coast to Georgetown harbor, and went up the Black River in small open boats. They made a settlement on the bank of this stream, near a large white pine-tree. Since all trees of this kind were kept for the use of the king of England, this beautiful pine which threw its shadow over their homes was called the King's Tree. This was the beginning of the present town of Kingstree.

The whole of Williamsburg township was given to these Scots, one of whose leaders was John Witherspoon. The first settlers had to bear many hardships. It was winter and there were no roads through the wilderness in which they lived. They had no horses. Wood and food were carried on the backs of men. Their first

houses were log cabins, with nothing but the earth as a floor. In many cases the house had no door; instead of that, one side of the cabin was left open. Wild beasts came near in the darkness and fires were kept burning all night to drive them away. Axes kept up a continual ringing in the great woods; trees were cut down and crops planted. The people had strong faith in God and great determination, and within a few years Williamsburg township became a happy and prosperous community.

The Welsh Settlement on the Pee Dee River. — Two years later, 1736, a number of Welsh families built homes in the "Welsh Neck," a tract of rich land lying in a bend of the upper Pee Dee River. The leader of this colony was James James. Many influential men of South Carolina sprang from the people of "Welsh Neck." Later still (1746) some Highlanders came directly from Scotland and built homes in the present Darlington County.

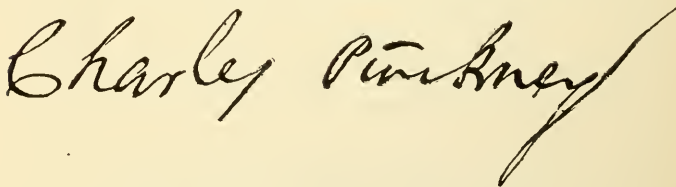
The German Settlements. — About 1730 a few Scotch-Irish families led by the Thompsons, McCords, and Russells entered the region now called Orangeburgh County. Five years later about two hundred German-Swiss settlers came to the same region. They were Lutherans in religion. In 1732 a body of German and French-Swiss colonists built homes on the Savannah River, forty miles from the mouth of that stream. They called their settlement Purrysburgh, in honor of their leader, John Peter Purry.

From Orangeburgh the Germans moved up the banks of the Congaree. Within a period of ten years, from 1736 to 1746, they built homes among the rolling hills of the famous Fork country, between the Broad and Saluda rivers. The German settlers were honest people, and they smoked their pipes together in peace. They arose early in the morning and worked in the fields until long after sunset. Many worthy and influential men were trained in the German communities to render noble service to the colony and to the state of South Carolina.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE PEOPLE OF SOUTH CAROLINA MAKE THEIR OWN MONEY LAWS.

Charles Pinckney. — Charles Pinckney was the son of Thomas Pinckney, an Englishman who came to live

A large, elegant handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "Charles Pinckney". The signature is written in dark ink and features a long, sweeping flourish at the end.

THE AUTOGRAPH OF CHIEF JUSTICE PINCKNEY

in Charles Town in 1692. Charles went to England to get an education; when he came back to Charles Town he became a lawyer; later in life he was made chief justice of the colony.

The first public office held by Pinckney was that of member of the body of lawmakers of South Carolina. This body had always furnished the money to pay the expenses of the colonial government. In 1735, however, Thomas Broughton, acting as governor, added the sum of ten thousand dollars to the public expenses, and told the lawmakers that they must pay it. The governor was spending the money of the people without asking their consent beforehand. Pinckney saw that the governor must be held back from doing this. On the 28th of March, 1735, he stood up in his place and offered the following resolution, which was adopted by the Carolinians.

“*That, The Commons’ House of Assembly in this Province . . . have the same rights and privileges in regard to introducing and passing laws for imposing taxes on the people of this province as the House of Commons of Great Britain have in introducing and passing laws on the people of England.*”



From a portrait in pastel

THOMAS BROUGHTON

Pinckney's Resolution Contains the Principles of

the American Revolution. — This resolution meant that in passing money laws the people of South Carolina had the same freedom that was possessed by the people of England. Thus, forty years before the beginning of the American Revolution, Charles Pinckney set forth the principle upon which that struggle was based. In 1776 all of the colonies went to war with England for the purpose of holding fast the freedom that was claimed and held by South Carolina in 1735.

CHAPTER XV.

THE CULTIVATION OF THE INDIGO PLANT.

George Lucas and his Daughter Elizabeth. — About the year 1737, Colonel George Lucas, an English army officer, brought his wife and daughters to South Carolina. William Bull was the governor of the colony. Colonel Lucas bought three plantations or farms near Charles Town. His home was established upon one of these on Wappoo Creek, west of the Ashley River, six miles by water from Charles Town. When Colonel Lucas returned to his army duties in the West Indies, his family and his three plantations were left to the care of his eldest daughter, Elizabeth Lucas. She was about sixteen years of age when her father first went away from the country home on the Wappoo.

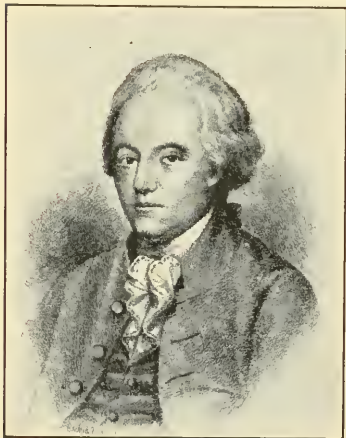
In letters written at the time, Elizabeth Lucas tells

us that she was in the habit of rising at five o'clock in the morning. She read books in the library until seven, and then took a walk in the garden and in the fields to see that the laborers were at work. Then she went to breakfast. The first hour after breakfast was given to music, the second hour to the French language and other studies. The rest of the morning until dinner was spent in teaching the young negroes how to read. After dinner there was music and needlework, until it was dark enough to light the candles, then books were read and letters written until bedtime. The whole of each Thursday was spent in writing letters. One day in each week was spent in visiting neighbors who lived in beautiful houses on the Stono and on the Ashley. Sunday was given up to the reading of the Bible and explaining it to the negro servants, and in teaching them to pray. It was a busy life that the young girl, Elizabeth Lucas, led among the mocking birds and the magnolias, near the beautiful waters of the Wappoo. She planted oak trees and fig trees. She watched the fields of rice in the swamp lands. She kept an account of the butter and lard made on the three farms, and sent to market beef, pork, corn, peas, white oak staves, and rice. Eggs were packed in salt and sent to her father in the West Indies. She was always careful to buy supplies of medicine and cloth, salt, sugar, and tools for the colored laborers.

Beginnings of Indigo Cultivation. — This worthy

young woman was anxious to help the planters of South Carolina. Only one crop was of great profit, and that was rice. She tried cotton and ginger, but met with little success. Then her father sent from the West Indies some indigo seed. His daughter planted it near the house at Wappoo. The first plants were withered by frost and the second crop was cut down by a worm. The third planting furnished a good crop of seed, most of which was generously given to neighboring farmers. Large tracts of land were planted in indigo, and in 1747 more than one hundred thousand pounds of good blue

dye were sent to England. Moses Lindo, a Jew, did more than any other man of that time to encourage the people to plant it. Next to rice, indigo became at once the most valuable product of South Carolina. Just before the Revolution the yearly crop amounted to more than one million and one hundred thousand pounds.



CHARLES PINCKNEY

The Married Life of Elizabeth Lucas. — In 1744 Elizabeth Lucas became the wife of Chief Justice Charles Pinckney. She went to live at her husband's home,

Belmont, on the Cooper River, just above Charles Town. There Mrs. Pinckney planted trees and tried to grow flax and hemp. She taught the negro women how to weave cloth from wool and cotton. With her own hands she wound the silk thread that was made by silk worms at Belmont. During a visit afterwards to England, three silk dresses were made from this thread. One of the dresses was given to the mother of King George the Third, and one of them, a shining gold brocade, was worn by Mrs. Pinckney herself when she was received at the royal palace. This dress has been handed down to her descendants of the present day.

Just before the marriage of Mrs. Pinckney a fire swept through Charles Town. The oldest and most valuable part of the town near the present East Battery was destroyed. The English people sent a large sum of money to aid the sufferers. Governor Bull bravely led his people in the work of rebuilding the beautiful city. A law was passed that only brick and stone should be used in the construction of new houses. Justice Pinckney bought a whole square on East Bay, and built a handsome mansion in the centre of it, facing the harbor. The house was of brick, two stories high, with roof of slate. There was a wide hall running from front to rear. One of the rooms on the second floor was thirty feet long and had a high ceiling. The whole house was wainscoted. The mantelpieces were high and narrow,

with fronts beautifully carved. In this house were born the two sons of Charles Pinckney and Elizabeth Lucas, his wife; namely, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney and Thomas Pinckney, who rendered great service to their country during the Revolution and afterwards.

In this volume the reader's attention is directed chiefly towards the deeds of the men of South Carolina. But what man, one may ask, ever labored more unselfishly and more successfully to help his people than did Elizabeth Lucas for hers? This noble woman must be given a place among those who have aided in building up the commonwealth.

CHAPTER XVI.

TREATIES WITH THE INDIANS OF THE UPPER COUNTRY.

Governor Glen. — On the 19th of December, 1743, a new governor arrived at Charles Town. He was a Scot named James Glen. The guns of Fort Johnson were fired in Glen's honor as the war ship which brought him sailed into the harbor. Then all the cannon of the city fired a salute when the ship let go her anchor. The new official came ashore and walked between two rows of soldiers to the council chamber in the city. He then presented a paper which declared that the king of England had sent James Glen to be governor of the province

of South Carolina. Then the council and the members of the legislature and the other prominent men of Charles Town walked with the governor to an open space at the edge of the water, where the above-named paper was read. Loud hurrahs, the firing of cannon, and a volley of musketry greeted the reading of the royal commission. Governor Glen marched again to the council chamber and took the oath of office. The whole company concluded the ceremonies of the day by dining with the governor at the city tavern. In this manner Glen began the work of his governorship, which was to last for thirteen years (1743-1756).

Glen Treats with the Cherokees and Creeks. — Ten years after Glen's inauguration, a fierce war was going on between the Creek Indians and the Cherokees. The governor wanted to restore peace among the red men. He therefore asked the chiefs of the Cherokees to come to Charles Town. On the 4th of July, 1753, he met the red men in his council chamber. The Indians sat for a long time smoking their pipes in silence, with their bearskin cloaks about them. Governor Glen urged them to live at peace with the Creeks.

The Cherokee chief, Attakulla-kulla, or "Leaning Wood," spoke for the Indians. He was small in size, but had great courage and good sense. He was called Little Carpenter by the white people. He spoke in the loud tone of voice that was common among the Cherokees, while the other chiefs made grunts to show that

they agreed with him. When the Cherokees went away the chiefs of the Creeks came to Charles Town and puffed their pipes in the council chamber with Governor Glen. When the smoking and the talking were ended, both tribes of Indians had agreed to stop fighting.

The Building of Forts. — Governor Glen bought from the Cherokees a piece of land in the upper Carolina country. Upon this he built a fort and called it Fort Prince George. It stood on the upper Savannah River, near the Indian town of Keowee. Fort Moore had been already built farther down the Savannah River, at the place where Hamburg now stands. A third place of refuge, named Fort Loudon, was erected on the Little Tennessee River, five hundred miles west of Charles Town.

War with the Cherokees. — After Glen retired from office, the Cherokees began to make war against the settlers in the upper country of South Carolina. They murdered some white people, burned their homes, and then seized Fort Loudon. The second William Bull was then lieutenant-governor. He assembled a body of riflemen and placed them under the command of Thomas Middleton. Some other Carolina officers who were of the company were Henry Laurens, William Moultrie, Francis Marion, Isaac Huger, and Andrew Pickens. A force of British troops under Colonel Grant came to help them (1761).

After a long march across the hills to the west-

ward, the little army found the red men posted behind trees upon a steep hillside. The battle was fierce and bloody, and lasted all day. From tree to tree and from rock to rock the Carolinians fought their way up the hill and drove the Indians before them in flight. They followed in hot pursuit and at midnight arrived at a larger Indian town. The white soldiers rushed into the town, set fire to the Indian huts and tents, and burned them to ashes. The English and Carolina troops then marched through the country of the Cherokees and burned all their villages and laid waste their fields.

Peace with the Cherokees. — Attakulla-kulla, or Little Carpenter, then came to the white soldiers and asked them to stop fighting. The Indian chief was sent to Charles Town to see Governor Bull. The latter went out to meet Little Carpenter, took him by the hand, and bade him welcome. A fire was kindled, and a pipe was lighted, called the pipe of peace. This was passed around among the company in silence. The Little Carpenter asked for peace, and peace was granted him by Governor Bull.

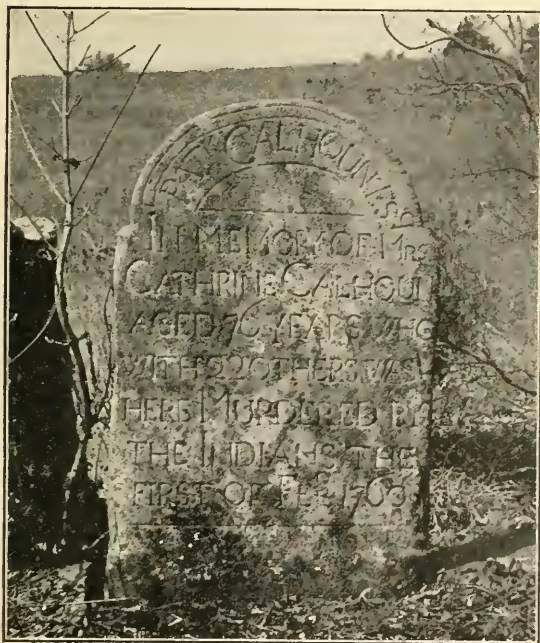
CHAPTER XVII.

PATRICK CALHOUN, THE FIRST LAWMAKER FROM
THE UPPER COUNTRY.

Patrick Calhoun. — We have now seen the men who were leaders in the work of making settlements near the seacoast of South Carolina. We have followed some of the settlers as they made their way from the seashore up the four great rivers, the Savannah, the Edisto, the Santee, and the Pee Dee. We must now turn our eyes to the northern border of the colony to watch the coming of a great multitude of settlers from Scotland. Among these new colonists we shall see a strong, brave man leading the rest of his people in the work of building homes in the highlands. This man is Patrick Calhoun, the father of the great and good South Carolina statesman, John C. Calhoun.

Scotch Emigrants to the Upper Country. — Patrick Calhoun was a Scot, a descendant of that large body of people who left the lowlands of Scotland and crossed over to Ireland, where they were called Scotch-Irish. Then they sailed across the Atlantic to Pennsylvania. Some of them made their way southward from Pennsylvania through Virginia into the Carolinas. The journey through the forests was long and weary. The women and children were borne along in carts. The men walked in advance, some with rifles and some with

axes. Each night the company of pilgrims went into camp. Around the great camp fire they sang some of the Psalms of David and prayed for God's guidance



THE GRAVE OF CATHARINE CALHOUN, GRANDMOTHER OF JOHN C. CALHOUN

and protection. At last the Calhouns and other Scots came to the upper country of South Carolina.

Long Canes Settlement. — In February, 1756, Patrick Calhoun led a small group of Scots with their families into the region west of the Saluda River. The land near

the creeks and rivulets was covered with wild cane from five to thirty feet in height. They built homes on Long Cane Creek, in the present Abbeville County. Their community was named the Long Canes settlement. In the year 1760 some Indians attacked this settlement and killed a number of the colonists. The rest fled, and among the number, Patrick Calhoun. Afterwards he returned to the country of the cane brakes, in Abbeville.

The Waxhaws Settlement. — About the year 1760 a company of Scots cut down the trees and built log cabins in the district known as the Waxhaws settlement. These early settlers wore buckskin breeches and woolen hunting-shirts. They had caps made of raccoon skins, with the tail of the animal hanging from the back part of the cap. They were good marksmen, and their rifles brought down game at long range. They built their log houses near the rivers and creeks, and the first season after their arrival a crop of corn was grown.

The stream of Scots from the northward kept on bringing settlers to the Waxhaws. A log church was built. The earth was the only floor and the seats were made of split logs. The people of the settlement came together in this building every Sunday to worship God according to the Presbyterian form of service.

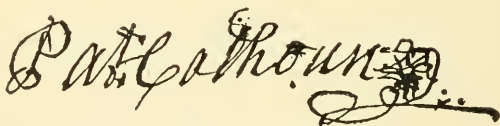
The Settlement of Lancaster County. — Through the Waxhaws settlement the stream of settlers poured into the region now called Lancaster County. Then they

crossed the Catawba and found the hills and ridges covered with forests of hickory, chestnut, and oak. The ground in the woodlands was hidden under a carpet of wild-pea vines and wild flowers. This fair region of forest and vine and flowing stream was the home of vast numbers of buffaloes, deer, bear, turkeys, partridges, geese, and ducks. The Scots made it their own home and their habitations remain in this earthly paradise until this day. From the Catawba region they passed across to the headwaters of the Broad and Saluda. One of the early settlers on Tyger River in the present Spartanburg County was Anthony Hampton from whom sprang all the great soldiers bearing the name of Hampton in South Carolina.

Other Settlements in the Upper Country. — About 1765, as captain of the armed men of the settlement, Patrick Calhoun marched some distance down the Saluda to meet and offer welcome to two bodies of settlers who entered the colony at Charles Town. One of these was made up of Germans, who settled on Hard Labor Creek, in Abbeville County. The other company was a group of Huguenot families, who established themselves near Long Canes. The Calhouns furnished them for a time with food. The Huguenots called their settlements New Bordeaux and New Rochelle, and afterward they gave to the county the French name, Abbeville. Just before the outbreak of the Revolution some Scots sailed to Charles Town Harbor and

then moved into the highlands to join the other Scots who were moving southward from Pennsylvania and Virginia. These Scots took possession of nearly all of the upper country of South Carolina. They were intelligent people, and worked with great energy. They killed the wild beasts, drove away the Indians, cut down the forests, and planted corn and wheat. They built churches and schoolhouses. Their ministers were well-educated men, and the people themselves had a good knowledge of the Bible.

Patrick Calhoun Admitted to the South Carolina Legislature. — In 1768 Patrick Calhoun, with a few others, presented himself before the legislature at Charles Town



THE AUTOGRAPH OF PATRICK CALHOUN

and asked the rulers of the colony to show more justice to the settlers in the highlands. These settlers wished the same privileges that were given to other tax-payers. They asked the lawmakers to open public roads, to organize courts of justice, to allow the upper country to send delegates to the legislature, and to help the mountaineers as they helped the lowlanders to build schoolhouses and churches and to secure ministers. In the following year (1769) Patrick Calhoun took his

seat among the lawmakers at Charles Town as the first representative chosen by the people of the upper country. Patrick Calhoun's last wife was the daughter of John Caldwell, a Scot who joined the settlement in Abbeville. Their son was John Caldwell Calhoun, South Carolina's great lawgiver.

PART II.

SOUTH CAROLINA'S PART IN THE REVOLUTION.

1775-1788

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE GROWTH OF THE TRADE OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

Lord Montagu and Governor Bull. — During the first twelve years of the Revolutionary period, that is, from 1763 until 1775, the province of South Carolina grew rapidly in population and in wealth. She was still an English colony, and Lord Charles Greville Montagu was the governor appointed by the king of England to rule the province. Governor Montagu spent most of his time in England, however, and left the management of affairs in the colony to Lieutenant-Governor William Bull. The latter was the most influential man in the colony at that time. He built up the trade of South Carolina until she became perhaps the most prosperous of the American colonies.

A handwritten signature in dark ink, reading "Wm Bull". The signature is written in a cursive style with a large, ornate initial "W".

THE AUTOGRAPH OF
GOVERNOR BULL

South Carolina in 1775. — The Scots continued to

pour into the upper country until the number of white people in the colony in 1775 was about seventy-five thousand. More than half of these lived in the highland country. In addition, there were about one hundred thousand African laborers. Nearly all of these lived among the people near the seacoast, where they cultivated the rice and indigo plantations. The Carolinians had attempted several times to prevent the coming of so large a number of negroes; but the ships of England and of New England continued to unload them in the colony.

South Carolina's Trade in 1775. — As lieutenant-governor, William Bull gave much attention to the development of the trade of the colony. This trade became very large just as the Revolutionary struggle began. Every year about one hundred and forty thousand barrels of rice and more than one million pounds of indigo were sent from Charles Town, Beaufort, and Georgetown, the seaports of South Carolina. This trade in rice and indigo alone was worth about five millions of dollars each year. Besides these articles, cattle, lumber, tar, staves, and the skins of wild animals were sold in large quantities. Every year about three thousand wagons made the long journey from the upper country to Charles Town to carry the furs and corn and wheat of the highlands to market. A large fleet of vessels was needed to carry the merchandise. South Carolina had some of her own vessels engaged in it.

There were five shipyards in the colony. Most of the vessels, however, were English. We are told that one could often stand on the wharf and count as many as three hundred and fifty sailing vessels, great and small, in Charles Town Harbor, coming in or going out or waiting to receive their cargoes for the markets beyond the seas. It was the largest volume of trade that went out from any port in America.

Charles Town in 1775. — At the time of the Revolution about fifteen thousand people were living in Charles Town. It was then the largest and richest city in the Southern colonies. The principal street was named Broad. There were many large, handsome, brick dwelling houses, two stories in height. As trade was the chief business of the people of Charles Town, some of her most important citizens were merchants. Among these were Isaac Mazyck, Gabriel Manigault, and Henry Laurens, all three of whom were Huguenots; also Benjamin Smith, Miles Brewton, and Andrew Rutledge. These and many others became very rich. They filled their houses with beautiful bedsteads, sideboards, chairs, and tables, made of mahogany and cherry and brought from London. There was a large quantity of silverware on the sideboards. Handsome coaches and carriages were also brought across the sea.

Social Life of Charles Town. — Many of the South Carolina planters also built beautiful houses in Charles Town and spent the summer months in the city. In

winter they dwelt on the plantations. Around the dwellings in Charles Town were gardens filled with the flowers brought from former homes in England and France. To these old flowers was added the glorious beauty of the Carolina rose and jasmine and magnolia.

The merchants and planters who lived in Charles Town in the time of Governor Bull, and afterwards, wore handsome and costly clothing. The ruffled shirt was of linen, the coat of broadcloth, the vest of velvet, and the shoe buckles of solid gold or silver. Their wives and daughters wore dresses made of silk or satin and covered with beautiful figures wrought in gold thread. The scarfs and gloves were of lacework. All of these garments were made in London and brought over in trading vessels.

The life of the people in Charles Town was full of gaiety. There were dinner parties, theatre parties, balls, and concerts. There were games of ball and games at cards, with the more vigorous sports of fox hunting, horse racing, and shooting at targets.

Culture and Education. — The first public library was founded in Charles Town in 1698. In the year 1748 a number of young men organized the Charles Town Library Society, which exists to this day. The St. Cecilia, a musical association, was organized in 1762. The *South Carolina Gazette* began its career as a weekly newspaper as early as 1732.

There were numerous schools. Many private tutors also gave instruction to the youth of the colony. Many



A VIEW OF CHARLES TOWN, FROM AN

of the young men of South Carolina went to England to pursue their studies in the schools and universities of the mother country. Governor William Bull, Jr., was himself one of the first native Carolinians to complete a course of study in medicine in Europe. There were a number of skilled physicians and as many as thirty-five well-trained lawyers in South Carolina at the beginning of the Revolution. Nearly all of these had received their education in England. Governor Bull wished to have higher education at home, and in 1770 he urged the legislature to establish a college in South Carolina, but the approach of war prevented the success of the plan. Charles Town was thus the home of



ENGRAVING MADE IN LONDON ABOUT 1765

a cultivated and brilliant people. Their leaders were men of learning, of high and worthy personal character, and moved by noble and patriotic purposes.

The People of the Middle and Upper Country.— Equally patriotic and noble were the people of the middle and upper country. Their lives were full of hardship. They had few slaves or servants. Their houses were made of logs or of rough boards, and their chimneys were usually made of split boards, plastered with mud. The fireplaces were wide and were used for cooking. Stools and benches served as chairs. Their dishes were of wood or pewter. The men did the work with their own hands and raised the crops

that furnished bread to the family. Their most profitable industry was cattle raising, from which some of them became rich. The boys and girls were trained to do their part of the work of the house. From childhood the boys rode on horseback and learned to use the rifle. They knew how to depend upon themselves. When the Revolutionary War came on and the British armies entered this upper country, the boys and young men of that region knew what to do. They planned attacks against the enemy in their own way. They captured forts in a manner not spoken about in books. They could ride fast and shoot straight, and they did more than any other people of equal numbers to win freedom for the American colonies.

CHAPTER XIX.

OPPOSITION TO THE STAMP ACT.

Christopher Gadsden. — Christopher Gadsden was born in Charles Town in the year 1724. He went to England and studied Latin and Greek and Hebrew in the schools of the mother country. When he returned to Charles Town he became a merchant, and in this business was very successful. He also gave much of his time to the management of his plantation. He was made captain of a company of artillery. When the

Cherokee Indians began their war against the settlers, Gadsden led his cannoneers into the upper country to meet the red men.

The Struggle with Governor Boone. — While Joseph Boone was governor of South Carolina (1761–1764), Christopher Gadsden was elected a member of the legislature by the people of Charles Town. Governor Boone said that the people had not managed this election in a proper manner, and that the legislature must make some new rules about conducting elections. The lawmakers refused to do this. Then the governor said that he would



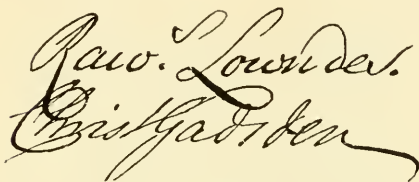
From a portrait by Sir Joshua Reynolds

CHRISTOPHER GADSDEN

not allow the lawmakers to meet together. They replied that they would not have any dealings whatever with Governor Boone. They refused also to pay his yearly salary. Boone gave up his governorship and went back to England. In this struggle with the king's representative Gadsden was the chief leader of the colonists.

The driving away of Boone was the beginning of the Revolution in South Carolina.

The Passage of the Stamp Act. — When George the Third, king of England, saw that the American colonies were growing rich, he determined that he


 Two handwritten signatures in cursive script. The top signature reads 'Rawlins Lowndes' and the bottom signature reads 'Christopher Gadsden'.

THE AUTOGRAPHS OF RAWLINS LOWNDES
AND CHRISTOPHER GADSDEN

would force some money out of them. He claimed that the land and the people in America all belonged to him, and that he could do

with them as he pleased. The king said that he would use the money of the colonists to protect the colonies against the Indians. He persuaded the British Parliament to make a law called the Stamp Act. It was passed early in 1765 and provided that all business documents in the colonies, such as wills, deeds to land, marriage licenses, bonds, and contracts, must be written on stamped paper. A stamp was also to be placed on books and newspapers. The stamps and stamped paper were to be made and sold by the British government at a good profit. Men called stamp distributors were appointed to bring them across the sea and sell them to the colonists.

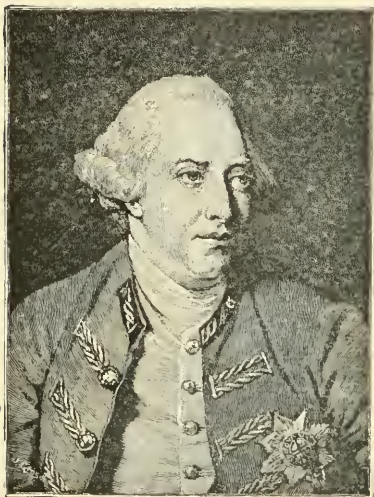
Gadsden Stirs up the People of South Carolina against the Stamp Act. — When the news of the passage of the Stamp Act came to Charles Town the people were not

pleased. Christopher Gadsden was a bold man and he loved his own people. He wished to see them hold fast to their liberties. He was plain and blunt in his speech and he was now full of anger. He stirred up the people of the colony to let Great Britain know that they would not pay any tax laid upon them by the British lawmakers.

South Carolina's Protest. — The South Carolina legislature came together. Gadsden had great influence among the members, and they prepared at once certain resolutions as a reply to the Stamp Act. They said that the British rulers were already making money out of the trade of the colonists. As to the defence of the colonies against the Indians, they said that South Carolina always had furnished and always in the future would furnish her share of men and money to fight the red men. They therefore declared that no taxes could be rightly laid upon the people of South Carolina by any body of men except the Carolina lawmakers.

The Stamp Act Congress. — The legislature then sent three men, Thomas Lynch, John Rutledge, and Christopher Gadsden, to attend a meeting of delegates from the different colonies. The meeting was held in New York City and was called the Stamp Act Congress. South Carolina's three delegates had a prominent place in the work of that body. When the Congress proposed to send a petition asking the British Parliament to withdraw the stamp tax, Gadsden spoke with great

force, urging the delegates not to ask any favor from the British lawmakers. "We do not hold our rights from them," he exclaimed. "We should stand upon the broad common ground of those natural rights that



GEORGE THE THIRD OF ENGLAND

we all feel and know as men and as descendants of Englishmen."

In these words Gadsden set forth the principle upon which the American people stood in their fight against King George the Third. They fought for the natural right to govern itself that belongs to every body of people.

Reception of the Stamps. — Near the close of the day,

Oct. 18, 1765, a British vessel from London sailed into Charles Town Harbor. She brought stamps and stamped paper to be sold among the colonists. Gadsden was absent in New York attending the Congress, but the people whom he had instructed took action at once. They met together that same night and built a gallows twenty feet high at the intersection of two streets in the most public part of Charles Town. They

made up bundles of old clothes in the shape of men, tied a rope around the neck of each figure, and suspended it from the gallows. Each man of cloth had a card fastened upon him with the words, "The Stamp Seller." The words, "Liberty and No Stamp Act," were written on the gallows. The next night the figures were cut down and placed in a wagon. Ten horses drew this wagon through the principal streets and a great crowd of people followed. When they came to a wide grass plot, a fire was kindled and the figures representing the stamp distributors were burned. It was very clear that the people of Charles Town were ready to fight against the sale of stamps, and the stamps were not brought into the city.

Repeal of the Stamp Act. — Early in 1766 the British lawmakers repealed the Stamp Act. They were persuaded to do this chiefly by the great statesman, William Pitt, who said that the British had no right to lay a tax on the colonies. The Carolina lawmakers came together and Rawlins Lowndes, one of their number, urged them to have made a marble statue of Pitt, their friend in England. This was done, and the statue was erected. It is standing to-day in Washington Square, in Charles Town. The Carolina legislature also asked Lynch, Rutledge, and Gadsden to allow their portraits to be painted. These pictures were placed in the hall of the legislature as a testimonial to the faithfulness with which these men had served their country.

CHAPTER XX.

THE "LIBERTY TREE" PARTY.

William Johnson. — William Johnson was a blacksmith. He came to Charles Town from the colony of New York. He was a man of honesty and intelligence, and he wished to see the people of South Carolina govern themselves. While Great Britain was trying to force money out of the colonies by means of a stamp tax, William Johnson asked some of the blacksmiths and carpenters and other mechanics of Charles Town to meet him under the large oak tree that stood in Mr. Mazyek's pasture lot near the town. Frequent meetings were held there, and the oak soon became known as the "Liberty Tree," because Johnson and his friends talked there about the rights of the colonists.¹

Christopher Gadsden sometimes spoke to the patriots under the "Liberty Tree," and they became his chief supporters in the fight against the Stamp Act.

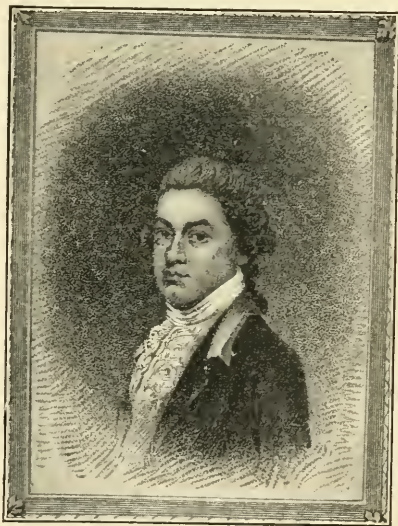
Under the "Liberty Tree." — After the repeal of the Stamp Act, Johnson and his followers met under the "Liberty Tree" to talk over the affairs of South Carolina. Gadsden was present. He made a speech in

¹ This tree was destroyed by the British after they captured Charles Town. It stood in the center of the square now bounded by Charlotte, Washington, Calhoun, and Alexander Streets.

which he told them that the British government would certainly make another attempt to lay a tax upon the colonists. His words were given the closest attention. Then the whole party joined hands, and each one solemnly promised that he would fight against any further effort of the British king and Parliament to force money from the colonists.

They did not have long to wait. In 1767 the British Parliament passed another law placing a tax on glass, painters' colors, paper, tea, and other articles that were bought by the colonists. The first act of Johnson's followers was to name Gadsden as a suitable man to elect as one of the new members of the legislature.

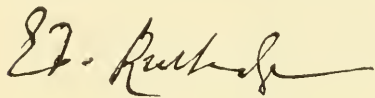
They then met under the oak tree, hung lights in its branches, and fired sky rockets to show that they were still ready to fight for freedom. Governor Mon-



John Lynch

tagu would not, however, allow the new legislature to remain long in session. The tax still rested upon the colonists.

Non-Importation Agreement. — At four o'clock one afternoon in July, 1769, Johnson and his company met under the "Liberty Tree." They prepared a written agreement which every one in Charles Town was asked to sign. The merchants of the town held a meeting, also, and drew up the same agreement, which was that the signers of this paper would not buy any goods or articles


 A handwritten signature in dark ink, appearing to read "Edw. Rutledge", with a long, sweeping flourish extending to the right.

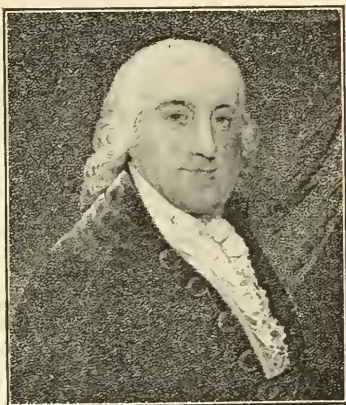
THE AUTOGRAPH OF EDWARD RUTLEDGE

from British merchants except powder, shot, books, and tools. They agreed also not to buy any

negro laborers brought by British ships. For more than a year the Carolinians kept this agreement. Then, after the other colonies began again to buy British goods, the people of Carolina allowed British merchandise to enter their ports.

Tea Tax. — The opposition of the colonists to the British tax laws caused the British government to take away the tax from every article except tea. Then the ship *London*, commanded by Captain Curling, came across the ocean from London laden with two hundred and fifty-seven chests of tea (1773). When the *London* cast anchor in Charles Town Harbor, the people of the colony were told that they could buy the

tea at a reduced price. In addition to the low price of the tea, however, they were expected to pay also six cents as a tax upon each pound of it. The people of the city at once held a meeting in which it was agreed that the tea must not be sold. They were not willing, they said, to pay to Great Britain a tax of any kind whatsoever. The tea, therefore, was stored away and left unsold. Another ship came later with more tea. Then some of the merchants of Charles Town to whom this tea had been sent threw all of the tea chests into the sea.



EDWARD RUTLEDGE

First Continental Congress. — During the summer of 1774 a call was sent throughout all of the thirteen colonies, asking each one to send delegates to the first Continental Congress at Philadelphia. A general meeting of the people of South Carolina was therefore held at Charles Town on the 6th of July. Men were there from nearly every part of the colony. The patriots of the "Liberty Tree" were all present and took a leading part. The talking went on throughout the entire day. The next morning the great meeting continued the dis-

cussion, and then five Carolinians were chosen to speak at Philadelphia for their colony. These were Henry Middleton, John Rutledge, Christopher Gadsden, Thomas Lynch, and Edward Rutledge.

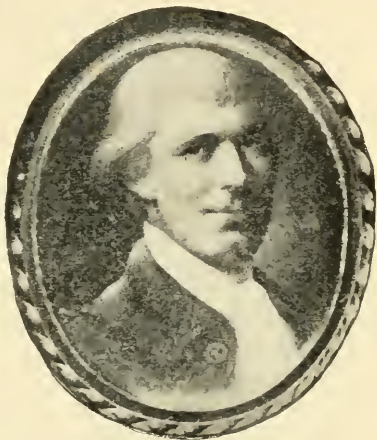
CHAPTER XXI.

PREPARING FOR WAR.

Arthur Middleton. — Arthur Middleton was the grandson of that Arthur Middleton who held the position of President of the Council of South Carolina from 1724 to 1729. The younger Middleton was sent to England to receive his education. When he returned to South Carolina he became one of the leaders of his people in their opposition to the laws passed by the English government. Christopher Gadsden, William Henry Drayton, and Arthur Middleton were the three men who kept on telling the people of South Carolina that they must fight for their liberty. Gadsden was in Philadelphia much of the time, as a member of the Continental Congress. In their fight against the British laws, therefore, the people were led by Drayton and Middleton.

The Provincial Congress. — On the 11th of January, 1775, a large body of men met together at Charles Town. They came from every district of South Carolina. As representatives of the people of South Carolina

they called themselves the Provincial or Colonial Congress. They claimed that in the name of the people they had a right to manage all of the affairs of the province. They appointed a secret committee to take any action that might be necessary. This committee, consisting of William Henry Drayton, Arthur Middleton, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, William Gibbes, and Edward Weyman, acted at once. The night after their appointment they seized the public powder, muskets, and swords which were stored at Charles Town. They wished to be ready for the struggle that was near at hand.



From a miniature

WILLIAM GIBBES

On Sunday, June 4, 1775, the Provincial Congress met again. Religious services were first engaged in by the members, and then a written agreement previously prepared was read. This bound the members "under every tie of religion and honor, to associate as a band in the defense of South Carolina against every foe, . . . solemnly engaging that whenever our Continental or

Provincial Councils shall deem it necessary, we will go forth and be ready to sacrifice our lives and fortunes to secure her freedom and safety." The paper was then spread upon a table and every member of the Congress came forward and wrote his name upon it. This public agreement meant that the people had now deter-

mined to have a government of their own.



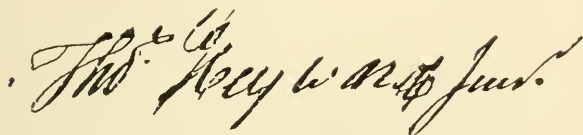
THOMAS HEYWARD, JR.

The men who thus offered their lives and fortunes in behalf of freedom determined that the colonists should be furnished with swords and guns. They voted a million dollars to pay the expenses of the soldiers, and then appointed a council of safety to manage all the affairs of the colony.

The Council of Safety.—This council consisted of Henry Laurens, Charles Pinckney, Rawlins Lowndes, Thomas Ferguson, Miles Brewton, Arthur Middleton, Thomas Heyward, Jr., Thomas Bee, John Huger, James Parsons, William Henry Drayton, Benjamin Elliot, and William Williamson. This council was given power to command all soldiers and to use all public money in the colony. The council was now the real ruler of the

people. Two members of this council were ready and eager to drive away all of the king's officers and thus make a complete end of the royal government. These two were William Henry Drayton and Arthur Middleton.

Reports of War from the Other Colonies. — The battles of Lexington and Bunker Hill, in Massachusetts, were fought early in 1775. During the summer of that

A handwritten signature in cursive script, reading "Thos. Heyward, Jr." with a flourish at the end.

THE AUTOGRAPH OF THOMAS HEYWARD, JR.

year Gen. George Washington, as commander of the American army, drew a line of soldiers around Boston and kept the British army in that town. Washington needed powder for his riflemen, and he sent letters to the various colonies, asking them to send it. Middleton and Drayton acted upon the instant. With the aid of some Georgians the South Carolinians captured a British vessel which was bringing powder to the Indians. Five thousand pounds of this valuable article were sent at once to Boston. Washington's riflemen and cannoneers used it in driving the British army out of New England.

Approach of British War Ships. — There was great excitement in Charles Town on the 15th of September, 1775. Early on that morning the people looked across

the harbor to Fort Johnson and saw South Carolina riflemen holding the fortress. These soldiers belonged to Moultrie's regiment and were led by Colonel Motte. Acting under the orders of the Council of Safety, they had crossed the harbor during the previous night, captured the small body of British soldiers, and hauled down the British flag. On the same day Lord William Campbell, the last of the royal governors, left Charles Town and went on board a British war ship. The colony of South Carolina was now ruled entirely by the Council of Safety, which was appointed by the people themselves. Thomas Heyward, Jr., led his artillerymen into Fort Johnson to help Motte's riflemen.



THE LIBERTY FLAG

A blue flag with a crescent in the corner and the word "Liberty" in the center was raised over the fort. This was South Carolina's flag. Under that banner the soldiers were now ready to fight for their liberty against any force that

Great Britain might send against them.

First Battle of the Revolution in South Carolina. — On the 12th of November, 1775, the first battle of the Revolution in South Carolina was fought. Two British war vessels lay before Charles Town. When they tried to enter the harbor some old boats were sunk in the channel to keep them out. The British gunners then opened fire against the *Defence*, a small Carolina

war vessel. Captain Simon Tufts of the *Defence* replied with his guns, and Heyward's cannon at Fort Johnson sent their balls through the sails of the British vessels. The latter did not dare to come close to the town. The war had now begun. It was Sunday, but on that same day the Congress of South Carolina met together and asked Almighty God to help them in the great struggle.

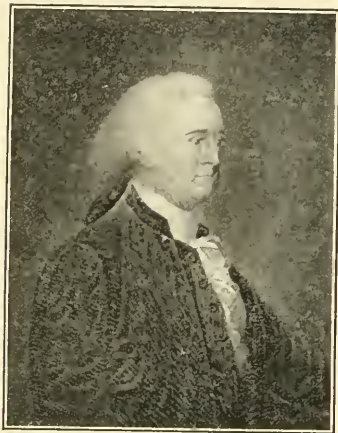
CHAPTER XXII.

JOHN RUTLEDGE, FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE INDEPENDENT STATE OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

John Rutledge. — John Rutledge was the son of a physician named John Rutledge who came to South Carolina about 1730. The young John and his brothers, Edward and Hugh, were sent to England to receive an education. They all became lawyers in Charles Town. John and Edward were members of the Continental Congress at Philadelphia in 1774 and also in 1775. After the battle fought in the harbor on the 12th of November, John Rutledge was made a member of the Council of Safety. He was soon afterwards chosen as first president of the separate and independent state of South Carolina.

Establishing a Commonwealth. — The Provincial Congress, whose members were chosen by the people of the colony, met at Charles Town on the 1st of February,

1776. They went to work to make a new form of government to take the place of the king's government. You remember that the king's governor and the king's government had been driven out of the colony months before (Sept. 15, 1775).

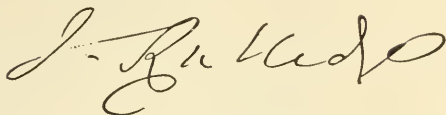


JOHN RUTLEDGE

The first step in the work was the appointment of a committee. This committee wrote out a plan for the new government which was read to the entire congress. From day to day, for about twelve days, the members continued

to talk about the new method of government. Then on Tuesday, March 26, 1776, the vote was taken and the plan was adopted. The president and secretary of the congress then signed the written form which declared that South Carolina was no longer a colony subject to the king of Great Britain, but that she was a free and independent state. At four o'clock in the afternoon of the same day (March 26), the representatives of the people met again. They declared that they were the general assembly or law-making body of the new state of South Carolina. They elected thirteen

men of their own number to sit separately as a legislative council or upper house of lawmakers. John Rutledge was then chosen president of South Carolina. Henry Laurens was elected vice-president. The title of governor was brought into use in 1779.

A handwritten signature in cursive script, reading 'J. Rutledge', written in dark ink.

THE AUTOGRAPH OF PRESIDENT RUTLEDGE

South Carolina the First Colony to Become an Independent State. — The new state government was established in the name of the people of South Carolina. From that day onward they ruled themselves. They were not subject to any other government on earth. They said at the time that if the king of Great Britain would treat them justly and not tax them, they would accept him again as ruler. The king began to fight them, however, and for eight years the war went on in America. South Carolina was the first colony among the thirteen to throw off the royal authority and to set up in its place a new, independent government of her own.

CHAPTER XXIII.

WILLIAM HENRY DRAYTON, FIRST CHIEF JUSTICE
OF THE INDEPENDENT STATE OF
SOUTH CAROLINA.

William Henry Drayton. — William Henry Drayton was born at Drayton Hall on the Ashley River, a few miles from Charles Town. He went to England when he was a boy, in company with Charles Cotesworth Pinckney and Thomas Pinckney. These three lads attended Westminster School in London, and afterwards went to Oxford University. Then they returned to South Carolina to work and fight side by side against that unjust ruler, King George the Third.

Drayton began to write letters to the papers about certain great rights and liberties which belonged, he said, to all of the American colonies. The people of the middle and upper parts of South Carolina had been without law courts for the trial of thieves and other criminals. For this reason the settlers had organized themselves as regulators, and had taken into their own hands the punishment of evildoers. At times serious disturbances arose when they tried to maintain peace and order. At last Drayton was appointed to the position of judge. In 1773 he went into the middle and highland regions and opened courts of justice. The people were greatly pleased. In his charges to the grand juries Drayton told the colonists about their rights. Many

of them were ready from that time onward to defend those rights against the king and Parliament.

In company with Arthur Middleton, Drayton was, as we have seen, one of the two leaders who urged South Carolina to prepare for a fight with England. On the 12th of November, 1775, Drayton as president of the Provincial Congress, was on board of the vessel *Defence*, in the harbor of Charles Town. He stood among the gunners and encouraged them to keep on firing their cannon-balls at the British ships. Drayton was the real commander of the Carolina gunners in that first battle in Carolina waters against Great Britain.



Wm H. Drayton.

Drayton as Chief Justice of South Carolina. — On the 26th of March, when the new state began her life, William Henry Drayton was elected by the assembly as the first chief justice or judge in the new government. He took his seat upon the bench in Charles Town. One of his first duties after he opened his court was to de-

liver a charge to the grand jury. In this charge Judge Drayton told them about the principles of right upon which the independent state of South Carolina was established.

The people of England, said Drayton, changed their king in 1688. They drove out a bad king and set up another one. The



ARTHUR MIDDLETON

people of South Carolina, in 1719, did the same thing. They cast off the Lords Proprietors and asked King George the First to rule over them. When King George the Third came to the throne, he began to treat the colonies unjustly. His oppression became so burdensome that the

people of South Carolina cast him off and were resolved from that time onward to rule themselves.

The Almighty had created America to be independent of England, continued Drayton. America's prosperity was already so great, said he, that the British rulers wished to take away from the colonies some of their money and power. But God himself was reaching forth His hand to deliver the colonies from their enemies and

to give them freedom. "Let us offer ourselves to be used as instruments of God, in this work," said the chief justice in conclusion. By so doing, the South Carolinians would become "a great, a free, a pious, and a happy people."

When Judge Drayton opened his court at Orangeburg on the 28th of May, 1776, the grand jury of that district presented an address to him. They spoke of the new state constitution as "framed for the good, welfare, and happiness of those who are to live under it." "We declare," they said, "that as we do most heartily approve of, so we are determined with our lives and with our fortunes to support, maintain, and defend it." This patriotic paper was signed by the following Germans and Scots of the upper and middle country: Henry Felder, George King, Michael Leitner, William Heatly, Garrit Fitzpatrick, Adam Snell, Gasper Brown, John McWilliams, Henry Rickenbaker, Henry Whitestone, Henry Crum, Godfrey Dreher, and Jonas Beard.

CHAPTER XXIV.

MOULTRIE'S DEFENCE OF CHARLES TOWN.

The British Prepare to Attack Charles Town.— In the month of March, 1776, General Washington drove the British troops out of Boston. The British government then sent a large body of soldiers under General Clinton and a large fleet of war vessels under Admiral Parker to conquer the Southern states. Early in June Parker's ships with Clinton's soldiers on board came to the mouth of Charles Town Harbor. It was their purpose to use cannon in breaking down the defences of Charles Town and then to send the soldiers ashore to capture the city and the people of the new state at the point of the bayonet.

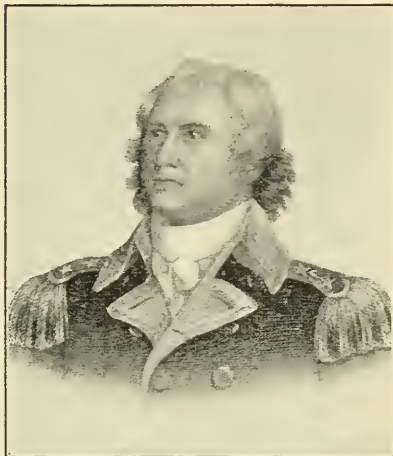
William Moultrie and His Fort. — South Carolina was ready to meet her enemies. She had already raised five regiments of riflemen and had placed them under the command of Christopher Gadsden, William Moultrie, William Thomson, Isaac Huger, and Thomas Sumter. The artillery regiment under Owen Roberts and Barnard Elliott mounted a number of cannon for the defence of the city of Charles Town. William Moultrie was continually urging his soldiers to finish the fort on Sullivan's Island. The men worked with a will and day by day the walls of the fort rose higher. Cannon were arranged behind these walls and Moul-

trie was ready to fight the whole fleet of British war vessels.

William Moultrie was the son of John Moultrie, a physician, who came from Scotland to Charles Town about 1725. Wil-

liam went with the South Carolina soldiers to fight the Cherokee Indians in 1761. When the quarrel about taxes began, he often met with the patriots of Charles Town under the "Liberty Tree" to talk about the rights of free men.

He was made colonel of the second regiment of South Carolina soldiers. With his riflemen and



Will^m Moultrie

some cannoneers he took up a position in the fort on Sullivan's Island on the north side of Charles Town Harbor. The walls of the fort were made of palmetto logs supported by bags of sand. The fort was unfinished on the land side. Moultrie had twenty-five cannon ready for use against the war ships.

The British Attack. — The British led their entire force against Sullivan's Island. Clinton took his soldiers ashore and tried to reach the rear of Moultrie's fort. Thomson's regiment, however, held Clinton's army at bay.

On the morning of the 28th of June, 1776, Admiral Parker's fleet of eleven war vessels sailed slowly towards the fort. The sea was smooth. The sky was clear, and the sun was pouring down a fierce heat. When the great, heavy ships of the British navy spread their sails to catch the breeze, it was a sight to bring fear to the heart of even a strong man.

Moultrie was looking out from his wall of palmetto logs. Above him waved the blue flag of Carolina, upon it the crescent and the word "Liberty" in large letters. "Well, Colonel, what do you think of it now?" said a friend. "We shall beat them," replied the gallant Moultrie. "Sir," said the other, "when those ships come to lie alongside of your fort, they will knock it down in half an hour." "Then," said Moultrie, "we will lie behind the ruins and prevent their men from landing."

Parker came close to the land and opened fire with two hundred and seventy heavy guns. The booming and crashing of the British cannon were terrific, and the smoke covered the sea and land like a cloud. The Carolinians stood bravely to their work. They took careful aim and fired slowly. Their balls went

straight to the mark and did great harm to the British ships. The balls from the war vessels did little injury to the fort; they merely buried themselves in the sand or in the soft, spongy palmetto logs. After a long battle of ten hours the British gave up the fight and sailed away from the fort. Admiral Parker lost one



From the painting by Oertel

SERGEANT JASPER AT FORT MOULTRIE

of his ships, and some of the others were so badly injured that they had much difficulty in sailing as far as New York.

Sergeant Jasper. — While the battle was raging, the flagstaff of the fort was shot away and fell with the flag outside of the wall. Sergeant Jasper was a brave soldier, who knew how to fight for his country. He leaped outside of the fort, tore the flag from the staff,

and brought it back. He then fastened it to another staff, climbed to the top of the wall and planted it there. The shells from the enemy's cannon were raining around him, but he stood there to give three cheers for the blue Liberty Flag. Jasper then went back to his gun and kept on sending heavy shot towards the fleet.

Another brave Carolinian, Sergeant McDaniel, was struck by a ball from one of the enemy's ships. With his last breath he called to his comrades, "Fight on, my brave boys; don't let liberty expire with me to-day."

On the sixth day after the great battle, that is on the 4th of July, 1776, President John Rutledge entered Fort Moultrie. The gallant defenders of the fort were drawn up in line and Rutledge thanked them for their defence of Charles Town. He then took his sword from his side and gave it to Sergeant Jasper as a reward for his courage. On that same day, July 4, in the Continental Congress at Philadelphia, four of South Carolina's delegates, Edward Rutledge, Thomas Heyward, Jr., Thomas Lynch, Jr., and Arthur Middleton, voted for the adoption of Thomas Jefferson's great paper known as the Declaration of Independence. The fifth delegate, Thomas Lynch, was sick and unable to cast his vote.

CHAPTER XXV.

WILLIAM THOMSON DEFENDS CHARLES TOWN
AGAINST A BRITISH ARMY.

William Thomson. — William Thomson was a Scot. He was born in Pennsylvania in 1727, during the journey of his parents from the north of Ireland to Carolina. When he was three years old he was brought by his father to the country that lies west of the Congaree River, in the present Orangeburgh County. Young Thomson there spent the years of his early manhood upon his father's plantation. He soon became known among his comrades as a very skillful marksman with a rifle. When he was about thirty years old, Thomson was appointed captain of the frontier Rangers. This was a body of riflemen who rode about on horseback to preserve order and peace in the middle and upper country. He led his men bravely in battle against the Cherokees in 1761.

In June, 1775, William Thomson was appointed lieutenant-colonel of the Third


 A handwritten signature in cursive script, reading "J. Caldwell".

Regiment, made up of THE AUTOGRAPH OF CAPTAIN CALDWELL the mounted riflemen whom he had led before this time. They were Scots, Germans, and Huguenots from the middle and upper country. One of the captains under

Thomson was John Caldwell, an uncle of John C. Calhoun.

The Tories Attacked. — Thomson's first service against the king was in the upper country. In company with William Henry Drayton, William Tennent, Ely Kershaw, and others, he went among the Germans and Scots in "The Fork" between the Broad and Saluda rivers, to persuade them to fight against the king. Some of the people of that region led by Thomas Fletchall said that the king of England had never done them any wrong and that they would not fight against him. Fletchall was supported by some members of a family named Cuninghame. The latter collected a force of riflemen and declared that they would fight for the king. Colonel Thomson led a body of one thousand men against the friends of the king, who were called Tories. He found them in camp at Great Cane Brake, on Reedy River, near the present Greenville. There he captured some of the Tories and scattered the rest (Dec. 22, 1775). A few small companies of the Tories kept up for some years afterwards their fight for the king. One of their leaders was so fierce and cruel that he was called "Bloody Bill" Cuninghame. This man was at first with Thomson, but later he joined the enemy.

The British Army Attacks Charles Town. — On the 1st of June, 1776, Colonel Thomson was sent to the eastern end of Sullivan's Island. He had about seven hundred

backwoods riflemen under his command. The fleet of Admiral Parker was then lying at anchor just outside Charles Town Harbor. Soon afterwards General


 A handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "Thomson". The first few letters are stylized and overlapping.

THE AUTOGRAPH OF COLONEL THOMSON

Clinton landed three thousand British soldiers on Long Island, now called the Isle of Palms, and made ready to seize Sullivan's Island. On the 28th of June, while Parker's fleet was pouring shot into Fort Moultrie, Clinton led his army to the narrow strait of water that lay between him and Thomson's force. The tide came in strongly and filled up the strait so that Clinton's men could not wade through. Clinton had a number of armed boats to aid him in crossing. Thomson's men had thrown up a breastwork and they had two cannon. The aim of the Carolina riflemen was deadly. They shot down every British soldier who came within range. The grapeshot from the cannon swept the decks of Clinton's boats. Thomson's backwoodsmen were amused when they saw the two big guns throwing a pocketful of bullets, as they said, among a crowd of their enemies. Clinton's whole army was thus kept from crossing the strait. The British plan of attacking Fort Moultrie by a land force from the rear ended in failure. We see, then, that while Moultrie was beating the British fleet, Thomson was winning a victory over the British army. Both of these Carolinians

fought to gain the glorious victory of the 28th of June. It was the first complete defeat suffered by the king's soldiers in the American Revolution. The entire British plan of conquering the south at that time was a failure. Parker and Clinton sailed away to New York and left the southern colonies free from attack for two whole years.

CHAPTER XXVI.

ANDREW WILLIAMSON DEFEATS THE CHEROKEE INDIANS.

Andrew Williamson. — Andrew Williamson was a Scot who lived near the upper Saluda River. He went to Charles Town, in 1768, with Patrick Calhoun, to ask the legislature of the colony to establish courts of justice in the upper country.

Williamson was a leader among the soldiers of his own section, and was appointed by them to the position of major. In 1775 he gathered around him at Ninety-Six a body of five hundred and sixty-two riflemen. Two of the captains at that

*For the Memorialist
Chas. H. Johnson*

time under William- THE AUTOGRAPH OF COL. WILLIAMSON
son's orders were Andrew Pickens and James Williams. A body of " King's Men " or Tories, led by the Cuninghams, fought a battle with Williamson at

Ninety-Six. The fighting did not continue long, however, for the Tories agreed to stop their warfare, and most of them returned to their homes.

The Cherokees Aid the British. — During the American Revolution the king of Great Britain persuaded the Indians to help him to fight against the American colonists. He sent his agents among the Cherokees and urged them to kill the settlers in the mountains of Carolina. The red men began to do their work of murder at the very time when Parker and Clinton were attacking the forces on Sullivan's Island. They burned homes, destroyed crops, and tortured captives all along the frontier. Anthony Hampton and his wife were among those whom the Indians killed.

When the news of the Indian cruelties came to Major Williamson, he sent messengers with all speed through the country to tell the militiamen to meet him near the place where Due West now stands, in Abbeville County. A large body of brave men, mounted on horses and armed with rifles, gathered around him. On the 31st of July, 1776, at the hour of six in the evening, Williamson set forth with three hundred and thirty horsemen to surprise the Indians.

The Cherokees Defeated by the South Carolinians. — Through the long hours of the night the men rode onward. After midnight they came to the Indian town of Seneca. Williamson had not sent scouts ahead to watch for danger, and suddenly, in the darkness, the rifles of the

Indians began to pour bullets into Williamson's column. The latter's horse was shot under him, but he succeeded in leading his men away without heavy loss. When daylight came Williamson set fire to some of the Indian tents and to the corn which they had collected there. Other riflemen came to help him, and with six hundred and forty men he defeated the Indians in a severe battle. He then destroyed five of their towns and built a fort near the present Seneca. This he named Fort Rutledge, in honor of the president of South Carolina.

During this campaign, Williamson was made a colonel, and an army of twenty-three hundred men of the upper country was placed under his command. Aided by a force of North Carolinians, Williamson swept through the country of the Cherokees. Over steep mountains and through dark forests he forced his way, fighting the Indians at every step. About two thousand of the red men were slain and their homes were burned. They were so completely defeated that they came to the Carolinians to beg for the lives of those that were left. A treaty was made. The Indians swore that they would not fight the white people again. They also agreed to give to the Carolinians all of the land now embraced in the counties of Anderson, Pickens, Oconee, and Greenville. Thus in October, 1776, Williamson added a great victory over the Indians to the double success won by the Carolinians on Sullivan's Island on the 28th of June.

CHAPTER XXVII.

HENRY LAURENS, PRESIDENT OF THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.

Henry Laurens. — Among the Huguenots who came at an early time to Charleston was John Laurens. He became a merchant. His son, Henry Laurens, was sent to a school in England. Henry Laurens afterwards took up the business of selling merchandise and became very rich.

Laurens was always ready to fight for his country. He was an officer among the Carolina soldiers who fought the Cherokees in 1761, and he presided over a famous meeting of the patriots under the "Liberty Tree." From 1771 until 1774 Laurens was in England. His children were at that time in an English school and he wished to be near them. He did what he could to persuade the British government not to lay a tax on the colonies, but his efforts were not successful. As he went on board the vessel that was to carry him to Charles Town, he sent this message back to London, "I now go resolved still to labor for peace; at the same time determined, in the last event, to stand or fall with my country."

Henry Laurens was president of the Council of Safety, which managed the affairs of the colony just before it became a state. He was chosen vice-

president of South Carolina, on the 26th of March, 1776.

Laurens was appointed a delegate from South Carolina to the Continental Congress. In the autumn of 1777 he became president of the Congress, succeeding John Hancock, of Massachusetts, in that office.

Laurens as President of the Continental Congress.—

During his term of office as president, Laurens asked the Congress to vote upon three famous measures. The first was the adoption of the Articles of Confederation.



Henry Laurens,

The second was the treaty between the United States and France, in which the French promised to send soldiers and ships to help the Americans. The third was brought up in June, 1778, while the Congress was holding its sessions in the town of York, Pennsylvania. At that time the king and Parliament sent letters offering to

make peace with the Americans. The British were willing, they said, to let the Americans manage their own home affairs, but they wished to keep the colonies united to the mother country. President Laurens wrote the



PRINGLE HOUSE, CHARLESTON, USED AS BRITISH
HEADQUARTERS, 1780-1782

answer of the Congress to this offer. He said that Great Britain must acknowledge the independence of the thirteen States and must take away her soldiers and her war ships before the Congress would have any dealings with the British Parliament. The people of the separate states were resolved to fight to the end for their freedom.

With great dignity and force Laurens wrote this reply in behalf of the American people. Both sides then took up their arms for the final battles. That last struggle was to take place chiefly in the South.

Laurens in Prison in England.—In 1779 Laurens was appointed by the United States to ask help from the Dutch. On the way across the Atlantic he was captured by a British ship and taken to London. He was taken through the streets of London, surrounded by a large company of soldiers, and was then shut up in a great stone castle or prison, called the Tower of London. Laurens was told that he would be set free if he would write two or three lines saying that he was sorry for what he had done against Great Britain. “I will never subscribe to my own infamy and to the dishonor of my children,” said the heroic Carolinian. He was kept in prison until the close of the war. When Lord Cornwallis fell into the hands of Washington at Yorktown, the British gave Laurens back to the Americans in exchange for Cornwallis.

Laurens then went from London to Paris and was one of the commissioners who signed the treaty of peace which ended the war between Great Britain and the United States.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

JOHN LAURENS AT SAVANNAH AND YORKTOWN.

John Laurens. — John Laurens, son of Henry Laurens, was born in South Carolina in 1754. He attended schools in Switzerland and England, and was studying law in London when the Revolution began. He then came home to help his countrymen to fight. The first service rendered by Laurens was as aide on the staff of General Washington. In the two great battles of Germantown and Monmouth, Laurens was in the thickest of the fight. He seemed to be most happy when he was in the place of danger. He went to Rhode Island to help to drive the British out of Newport. Such daring courage he showed there that he was made lieutenant-colonel. Afterwards Laurens hastened to South Carolina to assist in defending his native state.

The British Attempt to Take Charles Town. — In December, 1778, a British fleet sailed into the Savannah River and captured the city of Savannah. From that time onward it was the purpose of the British government to overcome and conquer the states of the South. The British forces at once entered Georgia and South Carolina and began to burn houses and drive away cattle. A strong British force under General Prévost advanced against Charles Town. Colonel Laurens led some soldiers in a dash against the British at Tulifiny

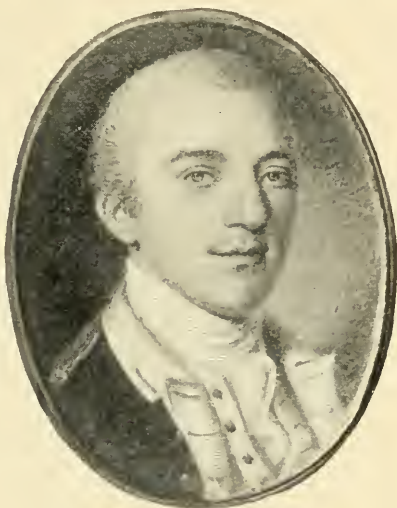
Bridge, but he was driven back. General Moultrie was in command of a small body of soldiers in front of Charles Town. There was some talk of surrendering the place to the British.

At last, however, Moultrie said, "We will fight it out." Laurens leaped to his feet when he heard these words and cried, "Thank God, we are on our legs again."

When the British saw Moultrie's men ready to offer battle they marched away.

Attempt to Drive the British from Savannah. — In the

autumn of 1779 Prévost and his troops were shut up in Savannah. The Georgians and Carolinians advanced to take the city from the British. They were aided by a French army and a French fleet. The French and American cannon opened fire and for several days they poured their shot and shell upon the British. Just at daybreak on the morning of Oct. 9, 1779, the French and American troops rushed forward to attack the



From a miniature

JOHN LAURENS

British breastworks. The light-armed troops of South Carolina, all led by Colonel Laurens, formed the principal column. Laurens led his men against the Spring Hill battery, the strongest part of the British line. Sword in hand, he dashed forward across the open space towards the British guns. Behind him rushed the men who had defended Charles Town against the British fleet and army. Musket balls and grape shot mowed down his men, but Laurens rushed on with his column to the foot of the high bank. The men started to climb to the top of the bank where the cannon were blazing in their faces. Along with the soldiers rushed the flag bearers.

Two South Carolina Flags. — Two beautiful flags had been given to the Second Regiment by Mrs. Barnard Elliott, who said to the soldiers, "I make not the least doubt but that under heaven's protection you will stand by them as long as they wave in the air of liberty." Sergeant Jasper carried one of these flags in the advance against the Spring Hill battery. Jasper was shot down, but the flag was seized by Lieutenant Bush. The latter attempted to rush to the top of the bank, but he was slain by a bullet and his body fell upon the colors. Lieutenant Grey waved the second flag until he fell. Sergeant McDonald took the colors from Grey's hand, sprang up the side of the breastwork, and planted the flag on the top. There it waved in triumph among the heroes led by Laurens. This flag marked the center of the field of battle. The fighting was fierce

and bloody. Cannon roared, muskets rang out, bayonets clashed, men shouted and fought until many of them fell. Fresh British troops came up and Laurens was forced to lead his troops away. McDonald carried



CHARLES TOWN IN 1780

the flag with him as his comrades slowly withdrew and left Savannah in the hands of the British.

John Laurens Sent to France. — When Charles Town was captured by the British (1780) John Laurens became a prisoner. A British officer was soon given in exchange for him, however, and he returned to his post on Washington's staff. In December, 1780, he was sent by the Continental Congress to Paris to

ask the king of France to lend money to the Americans. He was told to ask the king to send a second fleet to help the Americans against the British. When



LOUIS THE SIXTEENTH OF FRANCE

Laurens arrived in Paris his good sense, his wide knowledge, and his charming manners enabled him to win the friendship of the king's officers, and also of the king himself. When the king and queen were holding a public reception at the royal palace, Colonel Laurens was graciously received by them. He pleaded eloquently with King Louis to send money

and a fleet to aid the American cause. The king showed him great kindness at the time, and not long afterwards money, war ships, and an army were sent to America. The king himself borrowed from Holland ten million pounds, that is, fifty million dollars, and sent it all to the United States.

Laurens at Yorktown. — When the French fleet thus obtained by Laurens came to the American coast (1781) it aided Washington in capturing the army of Cornwallis at Yorktown in Virginia. Colonel Laurens took part in the siege of Yorktown. When the Ameri-

cans and French made the final attack, Laurens led a body of soldiers in a daring charge up to the very mouths of the British cannon. He was among the first to leap over the British breastworks. At his suggestion the men of Cornwallis were forced to march out of Yorktown and lay down their muskets in the same way in which Lincoln's army had been made to surrender at Charles Town.

CHAPTER XXIX.

THE BRITISH ARMY DRIVEN OUT OF NORTHERN SOUTH CAROLINA.

Charles Town Taken by the British.—Early in 1780 General Clinton landed a large British army about thirty miles south of Charles Town. This force marched into the neck of land between the Ashley and Cooper rivers and began to throw cannon shot and shells into the town. At the same time a large number of British war ships entered the harbor, sailed past Fort Moultrie, and poured their fire into Charles Town. The American forces were under the command of General Lincoln of Massachusetts. A long siege followed. The small American force sent back shot for shot in reply to the enemy's guns. The supply of food failed in Charles Town. The town was surrounded by a ring of heavy cannon that continued to pour in red-hot balls.

The defenders fought bravely, but they had to give up to the larger force of the British. On the 12th of May, 1780, Lincoln surrendered to Clinton, and the British entered Charles Town. Gadsden, Charles C. Pinckney, Arthur Middleton, and most of the other Revolutionary leaders of the coast country were taken prisoners and held until the close of the war.

British Cruelty at Waxhaws. — After the fall of Charles Town the British troops marched into the upper country of Carolina. They took possession of Augusta, on the Savannah River, Ninety-six, near the Saluda, and Camden, on the Wateree. From these points the British horsemen went into the highland regions, burning houses and churches. They took the Bibles and psalm books of the Scotch settlers and flung them into the fire. At the Waxhaws Colonel Tarleton's British cavalry fell upon Buford's regiment of horsemen. When Buford found that his men were surrounded he told them to stop firing. He then sent word to Tarleton that he had surrendered. The messenger whom he sent was cut down and then the British soldiers rode among Buford's men and shot them in cold blood. Swords and bayonets were thrust again and again into the bodies of men who lay on the ground. In this cruel manner nearly all of Buford's men were slain. From this time the British leader was called "Bloody Tarleton."

The news of the cruel work done by Tarleton at

the Waxhaws spread like wildfire among the Scots of the upper country.

Thomas Sumter. — Large numbers of the Scots



COLONEL BANASTRE TARLETON

seized their rifles, mounted their horses, and rode to the North Carolina border to place themselves under the command of Thomas Sumter. The latter was by birth

a Virginian, but he came to South Carolina and became a planter in the middle country. He was a member of the Provincial Congress and as an officer helped William Thomson in the battle at the eastern end of Sullivan's Island. When Tarleton advanced towards the Waxhaws, he turned Sumter's family out of doors and burned his house. Sumter mounted a swift horse and rode toward the North Carolina border, and as he went sent a call to his neighbors and friends to join him.

Sumter was over six feet in height, strong in frame, and weighed about two hundred and fifty pounds. His face wore a stern look, and at times his eyes seemed to flash fire. Sumter always demanded immediate obedience to his orders. His courage was so bold and dashing that it often led him into battle against an enemy much more numerous than his own force. Waving his sword above his head and calling to his men to follow, he would ride with headlong speed into the camp of the enemy. Sometimes he was repulsed, but he always came out of defeat as undaunted as he was before. This man of powerful mould, whose voice gave new courage to his men, became the chief leader of the Carolinians against the British in the closing years of the Revolution. Around him gathered the backwoods riflemen who drove away the armies of the invaders and won the final victory for the American cause.

Sumter's Men. — The men who assembled in

Sumter's camp wore woolen garments, called hunting-shirts, woven by their wives and daughters. Their caps were of raccoon skin, with the tail of a raccoon or squirrel hanging down behind. Their trousers were of deerskin, and upon their feet were shoes, called moccasins, made of the same soft leather. Each man rode his own horse. Some of them carried reaping hooks and mowing scythes instead of swords, and a few carried pitchforks, which they used as spears. Most of Sumter's followers carried a rifle of the flint-lock sort. The barrel of the rifle was long and heavy and its stock was black. With this weapon the backwoodsmen could send a leaden bullet to the distance of two hundred yards into an object the size of a man's hand. Each rifleman had a powder-horn slung by a cord over his shoulder and he wore a huge knife in his belt. We are told that Sumter's men were ready at any moment "to scalp an Indian, to hug a bear, or to fight British Dragoons."



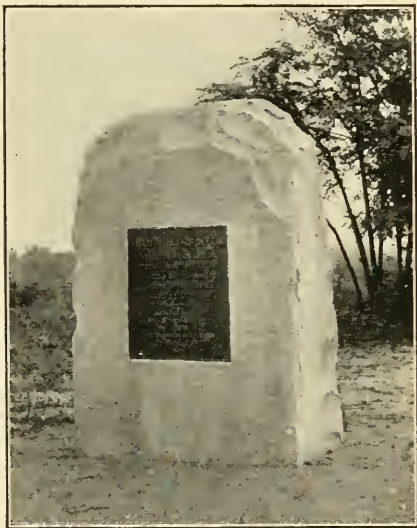
THOMAS SUMTER

The Tories of South Carolina. — A few of the Scots and Germans of the upper country of South Carolina were Tories who fought for the king. Most of these Carolina Tories were ignorant men who did not know what the war meant, for sometimes they fought on one

side and then turned and fought on the other side. Some of the upper country Tories helped the king in the war because, as they said, the people of the lower country around Charles Town had never given to the people of the highlands any share in the ruling of the colony. The great body of the Tories who fought for the British in South Carolina, however, came there from New York, New Jersey, and New England.

The Defeat of Captain Huck. — About a month after the surrender of Charles Town, a body of British led by Captain Huck rode up Fishing Creek into York County. Huck himself was a Tory from Pennsylvania. He was very cruel and killed a number of peaceable citizens, and robbed and burned houses, mills, and churches. By his wild, profane threats, Huck tried to frighten the women and children and make them tell where their husbands and fathers were hiding. A young girl, Mary McClure, mounted a horse and rode rapidly across the country to Sumter's camp at Clem's Creek. There she told her brothers about the outrages committed by Huck. About two hundred and sixty riflemen, led by William Bratton, Andrew Neel, John McConnell, John McClure, and Edward Lacey, dashed away through the forests under cover of night and came upon Huck at Williamson's plantation. Just as the morning of the twelfth day of July, 1780, began to dawn, the Carolinians advanced to attack the British camp. They found Huck's men asleep and their horses tied near at hand.

McClure's men on one side of the camp and Lacey's men on the other side, took careful aim at a distance of seventy-five yards. Crack, crack, crack, spoke the trusty rifles, and each bullet went straight to its mark. Huck's followers sprang to their feet and charged three times with bayonets. The long rifles rang out and each time the British fell back. Huck mounted a horse and without coat or hat galloped back and forth in the effort to steady his soldiers. At the crack of the rifle of Samuel McConnell the cruel leader fell from his horse and died. Then the word was passed along the line of Carolinians as they lay behind a fence,



THE MONUMENT COMMEMORATING HUCK'S
DEFEAT

“Boys, take the fence, and every man his own commander.” In an instant they were upon the British, shooting them down at close range and fighting hand to hand. Some of the redcoats ran wildly off and escaped into the woods. Some of the wounded British

soldiers were carried into Colonel Bratton's house and were there fed and nursed by Bratton's wife. She thus showed mercy to the men who had the day before threatened to kill her.

John Thomas and His Brave Band. — Let us now turn our attention to another body of riflemen who were kindling camp fires at Cedar Spring, near Fair Forest Creek, in Spartanburg County. They were Carolinians on the way to join Sumter. Their leader was John Thomas. On the day after Huck's defeat (July 13), the mother of Colonel Thomas rode through the woods and told her son that the British were coming to capture him. Building great fires, Thomas's men withdrew from sight and stood near with loaded guns. The British rushed into the camp expecting to find the Carolinians asleep. At a signal a hail of rifle balls was poured upon the enemy, and those who were not slain fled away into the darkness of the night.

Other Patriot Bands. — The region near the upper waters of the Catawba, Broad, and Saluda rivers was now filled with companies of armed patriots. Some of these won victories near their own homes. Col. Thomas Brandon captured a force of British soldiers at Stallion's, in York. Capt. Edward Hampton, at the head of a body of horsemen, made a dash at Dunlap's British cavalry and routed them. Some North Carolina riflemen, aided by Col. Andrew Hampton and Capt. William

Smith, of South Carolina, captured Thicketty Fort, in Spartanburg County.

Some Battles Won by Sumter's Men. — Nearly a dozen battles were fought by Sumter's men. The most important of these was the attack made by Sumter and William R. Davie against the British at Hanging Rock. This British post was in the present Lancaster County, on the road running north from Camden. At daybreak on the morning of August 6th the men of the two Carolinas led by Sumter rode forward at a rapid pace and opened fire at close range. The chief part of the British troops was cut to pieces, and their camp with its supplies was captured. Ten days later Sumter made a swift march to Camden Ferry and there fell suddenly upon a company of British. Col. Thomas Taylor led Sumter's men in this bold attack. One hundred British soldiers were seized, and also a large train of wagons with supplies for the British army at Camden.

Within a period of three months after the fall of Charles Town Sumter and his men drove the British out of the northern part of the state back to their post at Camden. Lord Cornwallis, the British commander, saw that he was in great danger when Sumter galloped up to Camden Ferry, within a mile of Camden, and captured the British supplies of food and ammunition. Cornwallis knew, therefore, that he must retreat to Charles Town or fight desperately to hold his position on the Catawba River.

CHAPTER XXX.

FRANCIS MARION IN THE PEE DEE COUNTRY.

Gates Defeated at Camden. — The successes won by Sumter and his men were followed by the defeat of General Gates at Camden. Gates came from the north-



FRANCIS MARION

ward to help the people of South Carolina against the British. His army was made up of soldiers from Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina. They were more numerous than the forces under Cornwallis, but Gates was a poor leader and

Cornwallis fell suddenly upon him at Camden and defeated his army (August 16, 1780).

Cornwallis Overrunning the Carolinas. — The British cavalry under Tarleton then rode swiftly in search of Sumter. While Sumter's men were halting at Fishing

Creek to take a rest, Tarleton dashed in among them and scattered the entire command. It was a dark hour for the people of South Carolina. Many of them thought that the cause of liberty was lost. The British marched into North Carolina, and Cornwallis told the people of both Carolinas that they must help the king. If they refused to support the British, Cornwallis was ready to hang the patriots and to destroy their homes. In this time of sore trial Francis Marion led his horsemen into the field.

Francis Marion. — Marion was a Huguenot, born in 1732 on his father's plantation, in St. John's parish, Berkeley. We have already seen him fighting against the Cherokees. As an officer of the Second Regiment, Marion took part in the defence of Fort Moultrie and in the assault against the Spring Hill battery at Savannah. A sprained ankle gave him an enforced furlough and caused him to retire to his plantation. He did not, for that reason, become a prisoner when Charles Town fell. When Cornwallis invaded the upper country Marion went into North Carolina. As Gates marched southward toward Camden, Marion returned to the region between the Santee and the Pee Dee, and there began his swift, sudden attacks against the enemies of his country.

Patriots in the Pee Dee Country. — After the surrender of Charles Town the British sent a messenger to the people of the country between the lower Santee and Pee Dee,

commanding them to become friends of the king of Great Britain. Major John James, dressed as a farmer, went to Georgetown to ask what this message meant. Captain Ardesoif, a British officer, told James that the people must take up arms and fight for the king. James replied that his people would never give aid to the British. Ardesoif became angry at this reply, swore at Major James, and said in a fierce tone, "If you speak in such language I will immediately order you to be hanged." James grasped the chair on which he had been seated, and waved it in the face of Ardesoif to keep the British officer from using his sword. He then rushed to his horse, mounted, and galloped home. When James told about the insolent words of Ardesoif, the Scots, Huguenots, and Welsh of Marion's brigade took up arms to fight the British. Six companies of soldiers were formed, and Major James and Major Hugh Giles were chosen to lead them. It was this body of horsemen that agreed to follow Francis Marion.

When James's men gathered around their new leader, they found a man small in stature and slight in frame seated upon a large, fiery horse. Marion wore a round-bodied jacket of coarse, red cloth, with a short, cut-and-thrust sword buckled around his waist. His cap was of leather, and upon it there was fastened a silver crescent. He was well tanned by exposure to the sun, and his face always wore a hard, stern look. Marion's manner was quiet, he had little to say, but he seemed never to sleep,

and was always ready with daring courage to rush into the thickest part of a fight. Kindness and truthfulness were the strong marks of his character. "Never shall a house be burned by one of my people," he declared; "to distress poor women and children is what I detest."

The men and boys who followed Marion were sometimes fewer than twenty in number, and they hardly ever exceeded seventy. Sometimes there were negro servants in his band of soldiers. Each man rode the horse which he had unhitched from his own plow. The country blacksmiths took the saws from sawmills and made large, rude swords for Marion's troopers. Some of them carried long, black-stocked rifles and large powder horns. Marion's men hid themselves in the swamps along the Pee Dee. They followed narrow, winding paths through the tangled thickets and made their camp fires beneath the pines and cypress trees where no stranger could find them. By means of signals, such as hooting like an owl, chattering like a squirrel, or screaming like a panther, these men of the woods warned one another of the approach of the enemy. They would dash out and fight a desperate hand to hand battle with the British, kill a number of them, and then, as suddenly and as swiftly as they came, plunge into the dense, dark forest again.

Marion's Repeated Attacks on the British. — When Marion took command of his backwoodsmen he led them at once into Britton's Neck, between the Great and Little Pee Dee rivers. A white badge was fastened to

the hat of each horseman in order that he might know his comrades in the fight. At early dawn, August 13, 1780, Marion fell upon a British detachment and put it to flight. Major James spurred his horse in pursuit of Major Gainey, the British leader. James rode fast, but Gainey still kept beyond the reach of his sword. Passing a thicket they came upon a body of British horsemen who were ready to defend Major Gainey. James boldly waved his sword and called out, "Come on, my boys. Here they are! Here they are!" Then the entire body of British turned and dashed away into the forest. On the same day Marion found another force of British higher up the Pee Dee. He ordered his men to turn back in retreat. The British followed them into the forest. There Marion's bold riders swarmed around the British and defeated them.

Three days after these exploits (August 16) the American army under Gates was defeated at Camden. Marion led his men at once to Nelson's Ferry on the upper Santee. Across that ferry ran the line of communication between Camden and Charles Town. A body of one hundred and fifty men of the Maryland line, captured by the British at Camden, was on its way southward. Under cover of the darkness of the night, a body of Marion's horse, led by Col. Hugh Horry, dashed out of the swamp, captured the British guard, and set all of the prisoners free. A week later Major James concealed his men in a thicket near the town of Kings-

tree. In the bright moonlight he was able to count the number of soldiers in a British force that came marching along the highway. When they were nearly past,



From the painting by Chappel

THE BATTLE OF CAMDEN

James rushed from his hiding-place and captured the enemy's entire rearguard.

Cornwallis's Treatment of the South Carolinians. — Cornwallis now became more cruel toward the people of the Carolinas. He made the public announcement that all persons who refused to fight for the king would be put into prison, and that their property would be taken from them. A large body of soldiers under the

British Major Wemyss was sent into the region of the Pee Dee. They swept through the country, burning houses and churches, carrying away negro servants, throwing Bibles and psalm books into the flames, and shooting down sheep and cattle. Some innocent settlers were put to death. When the news of these cruel deeds reached Marion he called his men together and made a swift march of sixty miles to strike the foe.

Marion's Unceasing Raids. — At midnight, on September 14, 1780, Marion and his troopers crossed Black Mingo Creek upon a bridge of planks. When they reached the southern bank Marion dashed onward at a gallop leading his men. They passed swiftly down the stream to a camp where some of the British lay. A part of Marion's force leaped from their horses and moved to the right. A company of horsemen went to the left. Two lines of fire from opposite directions blazed forth upon the British, and they fled in confusion into Black Mingo swamp. Marion then made a rapid march thirty miles northward, and put to rout a body of British who lay in camp at Tarcote, in the fork of Black River.

After this, Marion established himself upon an island in the Pee Dee River where Lynch's Creek empties itself into that stream.¹ His enemies must of course cross

¹ This place of retreat called Snow Island was covered with dense thickets. Marion always kept boats ready so that he could leave it at any point. On this island he collected supplies of corn, powder, and rifles. Horses, too, were kept concealed in the dark woods.

the water in order to reach him here. He was near the line of travel over which flour and wheat and powder were carried from Charles Town to Cornwallis's army in the upper country. Marion captured some of these supplies and kept back many soldiers who wished to go to the aid of Cornwallis. The whole body of people between the Pee Dee and Santee arose in arms against the king. Some of Marion's men crossed the Santee and rode almost to the gates of Charles Town in making their attacks against the British.

An entire British regiment was now sent to stand guard at Nelson's Ferry in order to keep the line of travel open across the Santee River. At the same time Tarleton swept down with a large force into the Pee Dee country to capture Marion. Tarleton came, burning houses as he marched, destroying cattle also and other property. The small force of American woodsmen did not venture to give battle to Tarleton. They disappeared in the swamps. Tarleton marched for hours and hours through the swamps, and made long circuits, but he could not catch a glimpse of the swamp rangers. Then Tarleton said to his soldiers, with an oath, "Come, boys, let us go back and we will soon find the gamecock [Sumter], but as for this old fox, the devil himself could not catch him." Ever afterwards the name "Swamp Fox" clung to the gallant Marion.

Governor Rutledge Makes Marion a Brigadier-General.

— In March, 1778, Rawlins Lowndes became the second

president of South Carolina. In January, 1779, John Rutledge was again made chief executive under a new constitution and was called Governor, with full power to do everything necessary for the public good. In October, 1780, therefore, he appointed Sumter Brigadier-General and placed him in command of all the militia of the state. A little later he made Marion also a brigadier-general. When he was on the march, Marion kept near himself Thomas Elliott and Lewis Ogier, as members of his staff. The principal colonels who were serving under him in January, 1781, were Peter and Hugh Horry, Hezekiah Maham, and James Postell. Among his captains were John Baxter, John Postell, Daniel Conyers, James McCauley, and William McCottry.

The Fight between MacDonald and Gainey. — Near

*This 23^d Sept. 1786 —
Peter Horry*

THE AUTOGRAPH OF COLONEL HORRY

the close of January, 1781, Marion and Peter Horry, with only thirty men, went down the road towards Georgetown. Horry found a body of British and

drove them in flight before him. Major Gainey came dashing out of Georgetown at the head of a band of British horsemen, and Horry had another hot fight in the

woods. Horry's horse was shot under him, but the British again started to run away. MacDonald, one of Marion's followers, spurred his horse, Fox, in pursuit of Major Gainey himself. Faster and faster flew the horses. A British soldier came in the way, but McDonald shot him and still dashed on after Gainey. The British officer urged his horse, but the animal could not get away from Fox, the swift steed of McDonald. The latter grasped his musket firmly, and as his splendid horse brought him within reach, he thrust the bayonet up to the hilt in Gainey's back. The bayonet was torn loose from the gun, and the king's officer dashed on into Georgetown with the iron weapon fastened in his body. Gainey got well, however, and often again took part in battle with Marion's men.

Lord Rawdon's Attempt to Catch Marion. — Marion was now very active. John and James Postell crossed the Santee, marched to Wadboo Bridge and Monek's Corner, which was not far from Charles Town, and captured or destroyed large stores of supplies intended for the British army. Marion himself stole silently away from Snow Island through the thickets and at Halfway Swamp, in the present Clarendon County, rushed upon the front and the flank of a British column. The latter fled and left their baggage in Marion's hands. Then Lord Rawdon at Camden laid another plan to catch Marion. Five hundred British soldiers led by Colonel Watson started on the march down the Santee

towards Snow Island. At the same time a second British force led by Colonel Doyle set forth down the Pee Dee towards the same point. Marion and his men rode like the wind and met Watson at Wiboo Swamp, in Clarendon County. There the British were defeated. Watson soon afterwards made another attempt. He pushed out cannon in front of his army to frighten the Carolinians, but Marion's riflemen shot down the cannon-eers. The men of the swamps rushed upon Watson with such daring bravery and their aim was so deadly that he fled before them into Georgetown. Doyle, however, captured Snow Island and destroyed Marion's supplies. He turned to flee, but Marion came swiftly behind him. Doyle crossed Lynch's Creek at Wither-spoon's Ferry and destroyed the boat, but Marion's men made their horses swim the stream. They then attacked Doyle and drove him back to Camden.

Harden and Hayne. — One of Marion's officers was William Harden, of Beaufort District. Harden left Marion in March, 1781, and led a force of about one hundred men across the Santee and the Edisto into the country south of Charles Town. In a number of daring exploits there he captured in one week as many as one hundred prisoners from the British. He made a sudden attack upon Fort Balfour, at Pocotaligo, and the place was surrendered to him. He made his camp upon an island in Coosawhatchie Swamp, and kept up the war in that region against the British.

In connection with Harden's dashing campaign we hear of the tragic story of Col. Isaac Hayne. After the surrender of Charles Town, Hayne agreed not to fight against the king. Then came the unjust and cruel order of Cornwallis that he must fight for the king. Then Hayne said that if he must fight he would fight for his country, and he rode into the battle. The British captured and hanged him. He died like a brave, true man, South Carolina's martyr of the Revolutionary days.

CHAPTER XXXI.

THOMAS SUMTER AGAIN FORCES THE BRITISH FROM THE UPPER COUNTRY.

Sumter in the Upper Country. — Let us return now to the upper Catawba and Broad rivers, to seek for the "gamecock," Sumter. On the very day of his defeat at Fishing Creek (August 18) another body of his men was winning a victory only a few miles westward, at Musgrove's Mills, on the Enoree River, in the present Laurens County.

A force of Sumter's riflemen, two hundred in number, set forth from York County and rode all night towards the mills. They were led by Isaac Shelby, of North Carolina, Elijah Clarke, of Georgia, and James Williams, James McCall, Samuel Hammond, and Thomas Brandon, of upper South Carolina. At an early hour

on the morning of August 18, 1780, the patriots formed themselves in a line across the road on a timbered ridge, half a mile east of the Enoree River. Old logs, fallen trees, and brush were thrown together to form a breastwork. The horses were tied some distance in the rear, and the Carolinians took their places behind the log-work, with their rifles loaded and primed. Shelby held the right, Clarke the left, and Williams the center.

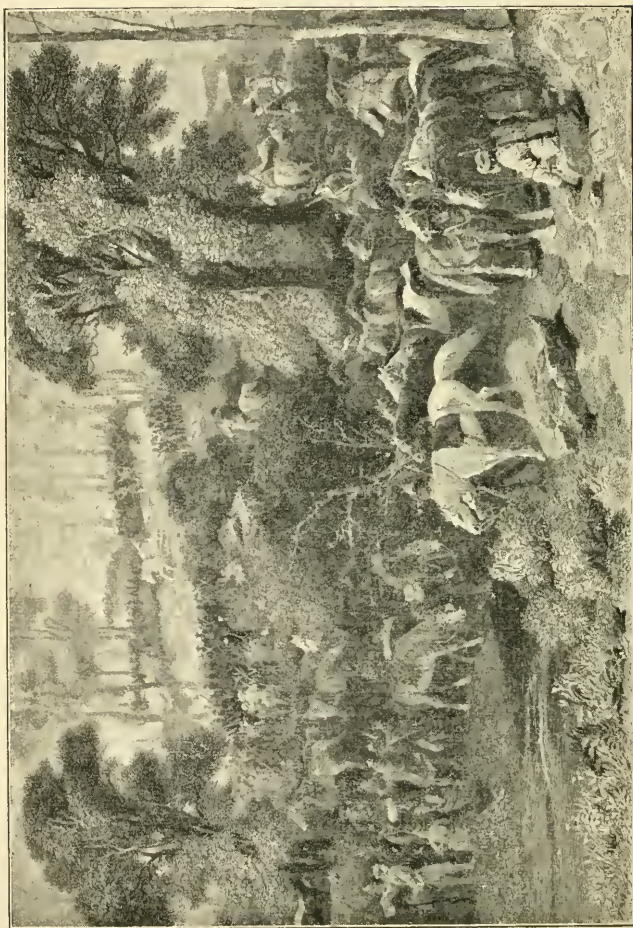
The Battle of Musgrove's Mills. — A small party of horsemen dashed across the river at Musgrove's Mills, fired upon a large body of British encamped there, and then fled back across the stream. About five hundred British soldiers followed them and advanced to attack the Carolinians on the ridge.

With drums beating and bugles blowing, the British came with a rush, shouting for King George of England. One of the American leaders told his men to wait until they could see the white part of the eyes of the British. Another warned his followers not to fire until they could see the buttons on the clothes of their enemies. Each patriot behind the breastwork picked out a man, took careful aim, and then a flame of fire blazed forth from the line of rifles. The line of the British was broken. Some of them, however, rushed in a body with fixed bayonets upon Shelby's men on the American right. Guns were used as clubs and the fighting was hand to hand. "I've killed their commander," shouted an American rifleman. As the British leader fell from his

horse, the mountaineers uttered a wild, fierce yell, rushed upon the British, and drove them from the field. Many of the British were shot down as they tried to make their way across the rocky bed of the river. The Carolinians captured a large body of prisoners and led them away into the mountains.

Sumter Raises More Troops. — The news of this victory brought fresh courage to the heart of Sumter, who was encamped in his old quarters on Clem's Creek, near the upper Catawba. He was more defiant than before, and the men of the upper country were again flocking to his standard. All of his old officers came to help in the work of organizing an army.

Colonel Lacey was sent by Sumter among the plantations of York and Chester counties to call the farmers again into the field of battle. Men and boys unhitched their horses, left the plows standing in the furrows, picked up rifles or muskets, and one hundred and fifty of them rode away with Lacey. Some of these farmers found a barrel of whiskey and took too much of it. In their excitement the men dashed off in pursuit of a force of British who happened to come in sight. Lacey galloped to the front, and at the foot of a hill, where the British could not see them, he dashed into another path and shouted, "This way, boys! The British are just ahead." At full speed the whole company followed Lacey until they rode into Sumter's camp. "Give your men a good supper, double



THE BATTLE OF KING'S MOUNTAIN

From the painting by Chappel

rations," said Sumter, "but no more whiskey to-night."

The October days came on and Cornwallis moved northward to Charlotte, in North Carolina. William R. Davie's gallant men fought the British at every step. From every hillside and in every dark forest, a hail of bullets was poured upon the enemy. So great was the danger of Cornwallis that he called the region around Charlotte the "hornets' nest."

Battle of King's Mountain. — At the same time a second British column led by Major Ferguson was moving up through the present Laurens, Union, and Spartanburg counties, toward the western hills of the Carolinas. The men of the mountains were aroused. Over the high ridges they came from Virginia and North Carolina, with fringed hunting-shirts, sprigs of hemlock in their caps, and long rifles on their shoulders. Led by Campbell, of Virginia, by Shelby and McDowell, of North Carolina, they rode to the upper Catawba in search of Ferguson. Colonel Lacey heard of their approach and led Sumter's brigade to meet them. Sumter himself was absent seeking an interview with Governor John Rutledge. With Lacey as guide, the mountaineers rode into the present York County and surrounded Ferguson on King's Mountain. The British numbered about twelve hundred soldiers; the patriots about one thousand. Sumter's men in this fight were led by Lacey, Hill, and Williams. On the afternoon of

the 7th of October, 1780, the patriots climbed the steep sides of the ridge upon which Ferguson's force was encamped. From rock to rock, from tree to tree, they pushed their way upward, yelling like demons and firing their rifles at the red coats of the British soldiers. Ferguson himself was killed, and his entire force either slain or captured. On the American side the brave Col. James Williams, of South Carolina, was among the dead.

The defeat at King's Mountain was so heavy a blow to the British that Cornwallis led his entire army in great haste through rain and mud back to Winnsboro, in South Carolina. Then Tarleton moved eastward to the Pee Dee country to look for Marion. The tide of war was turned back again. The work of Sumter, Marion, and Davie, aided by the men of North Carolina, Virginia, and Georgia, was making the American cause grow stronger and stronger.

Sumter Made Brigadier-General. — Governor John Rutledge, as we have seen, made Sumter a brigadier-general (October, 1780), and placed him in charge of all the militia in South Carolina. Sumter collected a force of more than five hundred men and led them across the Broad River at Fishdam Ford, from Union to the present Chester County. His officers were Colonels Winn, Taylor, Lacey, Bratton, Hill, McCall, with Twiggs and Clarke from Georgia. Sumter was then within a short distance of the British army at

Winnsboro. At one hour past midnight, Wemyss, with a British detachment, attacked Sumter's camp. Most of Sumter's men were ready and waiting, and they sent a rifle fire into the ranks of the British. Wemyss was shot down and captured, the whole field of battle was strewn with dead and wounded British soldiers, and the rest were driven back in rout.

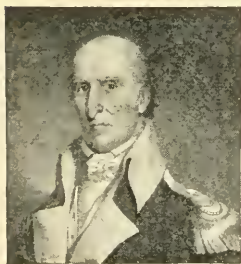
Battle at Blackstock. — Sumter moved westward to Blackstock on the southern bank of Tyger River, in what is now Union County. A large tobacco house built of logs stood upon a hill near that stream. In this house was placed a body of skillful marksmen under the command of Col. Henry Hampton. To the right and to the left of the house his other troops were drawn up in line. Tarleton led his legion in swift pursuit of Sumter and advanced to attack him on the hill at Blackstock. Near the close of the day, on the 25th of November, 1780, Tarleton's veterans, in their handsome green uniforms, rushed up the hill to assail Twiggs and Clarke, who stood to the left of the log house. Sumter himself swung around from the right of the house with the men of Lacey, Bratton, Winn, Hill, McCall, and Taylor. The house seemed ablaze with the fire from the guns of Hampton's men. Sumter received a ball in the shoulder. "Say nothing about it," said Sumter, "and request Colonel Twiggs to take command." The victory, however, was quickly won. The chief part of Tarleton's soldiers fell upon the field. When the news of the battle came to

Winnsboro, Cornwallis expressed the hope that Sumter would not be able to give him further trouble. "He certainly has been our greatest plague in this country," said Cornwallis, with reference to the "gamecock," who had, a second time, forced him to retreat from the northern borders of South Carolina.

CHAPTER XXXII.

ANDREW PICKENS HELPS TO DEFEAT THE BRITISH.

Andrew Pickens. — When Sumter rode northward into the mountains to nurse his wounded shoulder, another gallant Carolinian came into the field. This was Andrew Pickens. He was a Scot, and as a child, came to the Waxhaws settlement with his parents. Before he was twenty-one he took part in the war against the Cherokees. At the beginning of the Revolution he was made captain of a company of riflemen. He also sat in the legislature of the new state of South Carolina. In 1779 Pickens assembled a body of five hundred men from the upper country, led them across the Savannah River into Georgia, and defeated a much larger British force at Kettle Creek.

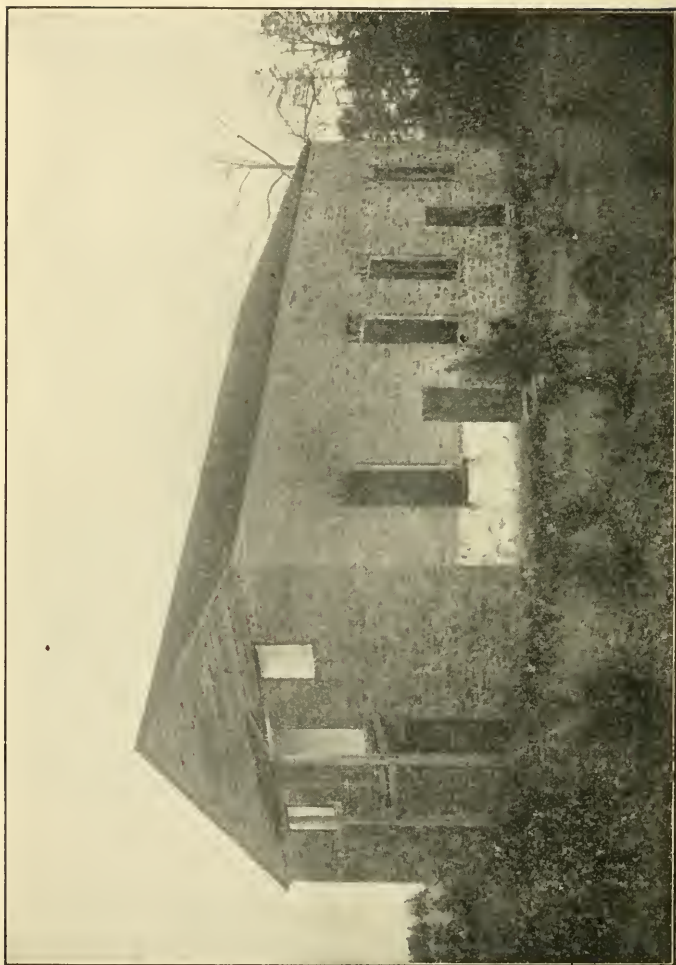


ANDREW PICKENS

Pickens Refuses to Fight for the King. — When the British captured Charles Town, Pickens retired to his plantation on the upper Saluda River, in the western highlands. With a great many others he agreed not to fight any longer against the king. The British promised to let him dwell at home in peace. Then came the cruel order of Cornwallis that he must fight for the king, and this was followed by an attack on the part of a roving company of British, who plundered his home and destroyed his possessions. Pickens seized his sword and mounted his old war horse. His clear eyes flashed fire, his lips became more firmly fixed, and his honest, open countenance was clouded with anger. He told the British that they had not kept their word, and that he meant to fight them. A British officer told Pickens that he would fight with a halter around his neck. By this, they meant that if the British captured him they would hang him. He declared that their treatment of him had set him free from his former promise, and so he rode away to the battlefield.

Pickens usually wore a three-cornered hat. His hair was put smoothly back and was tied in a long roll called a queue. He wore heavy silver spurs, and the two large pistols in his holsters were bright with silver ornaments.

Battle of Cowpens. — When Pickens left his home on the Saluda to take part in the war, Gen. Daniel Morgan, of Virginia, was marching southward across the upper Catawba and Broad rivers. Pickens and his men



OLD STONE PRESBYTERIAN CHURCH IN OCONEE COUNTY

joined Morgan on the Pacolet River, in Union County. Early in January, 1781, Tarleton with his legion came sweeping across the Broad and moved up the western bank of that stream in search of Morgan. The latter arranged his force of about nine hundred men at the Cowpens, in the present Cherokee County. The field sloped gradually upward. At the top of the long ascent were Morgan's old, experienced soldiers. Farther down the slope, in front, were the riflemen commanded by Pickens. They stood in an irregular fashion behind the trees on the slope. The skirmishers in front were led by McDowell, of North Carolina, and



Dan Morgan

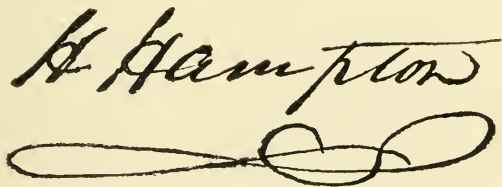
Cunningham, of Georgia. Pickens himself moved around from soldier to soldier, giving his orders in a cool, quiet way. He told them that if the British cavalry advanced, every third man must fire, while two held their loaded rifles in reserve. They were advised to take careful aim and fire low. As a last word, Pickens told his men to mark for their first fire the officers of the advancing line. These would

be known by the epaulettes or badges which they wore upon their arms or shoulders.

Tarleton's force amounted to about eleven hundred men. He had also two cannon. These opened fire upon the Americans, and at the same time the British foot soldiers and horsemen moved forward with a rush and with loud shouts. It was about the hour of sunrise and the red coats of the British soldiers were seen advancing through the smoke that was rolling from the mouths of the cannon. When the enemy had come within fifty yards of the line of Pickens, the latter gave the word. With a crash the mountain rifles roared out as if one great gun had been fired. Again and again the rifles spoke, and down fell the officers who were leading the British attack. Then the men who carried the muskets in Tarleton's line staggered. As they paused, another volley from the Americans stretched many of them upon the ground. The force of Tarleton's attack was broken. The American victory was really won among the trees in the front part of the field where the men of Pickens fought.

But Tarleton would not give up. He dashed forward on his horse and cheered his men. They fixed bayonets and advanced. Pickens and his men fell slowly back and the British met the American rear line near the top of the long slope. Then William Washington and James McCall swept around with their horsemen against the right end of the British line. At the same time Pickens

led his men around to the left end of Tarleton's line. There at close range they poured in a deadly volley. The greater part of the British troops threw down their muskets and surrendered. A few of them escaped from the field, among them Tarleton himself. The victory of the Americans was complete. Eight hundred British soldiers were lost. Tarleton's bloody work was brought to a sudden end, and a staggering blow was given to Cornwallis himself. One third of his army was snatched



THE AUTOGRAPH OF HENRY HAMPTON

from him by the victory at the Cowpens. The Carolina riflemen, led by Pickens, played the chief part in winning that glorious field.

Pickens Harasses the British. — The defeat of Tarleton did not hold back Cornwallis from his northward march. He moved his forces into North Carolina and fought against Greene at Guilford Courthouse. Pickens and his mounted men gave Cornwallis much trouble in the movements that took place just before that battle. Then Pickens led his soldiers swiftly back again, for there was work to do in his own state. Rawdon's British

force lay at Camden. Pickens swept down through the western highlands, and called the men of that region to seize their arms and enter the battle. They heard and answered his call. All the inhabitants of the upland country were aroused, and they followed Pickens to Augusta, just beyond the Savannah, in Georgia. Lines were drawn around the town, and in June the British force located there surrendered to Pickens.

Some of Sumter's Men. — The chief leader in South



THE FIRST WADE HAMPTON

Carolina was still Sumter. He bound up his old wound and called his comrades around him. Lacey, Bratton, Hill, Taylor, Winn, and Henry Hampton all led forth their horsemen to join Sumter. Another brave soldier came now to aid him in the fight.

Until this time Wade Hampton, brother of Henry Hampton, had given

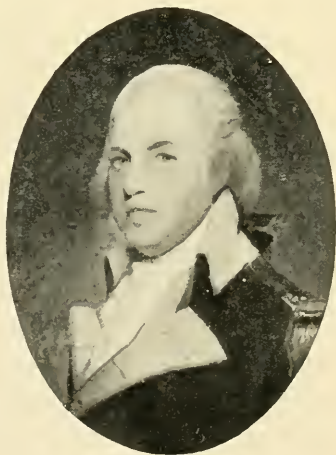
his promise that he would not fight against the king. The king's soldiers, however, came and seized him,

and were leading him away to prison. During the march, Wade Hampton made a sudden leap, snatched two muskets, and by pointing these at his guards, made his escape. He rode at once to Sumter's camp, and became one of his most daring officers. Back and forth throughout the region between the Catawba and the Saluda rode Sumter and his men. He made a sudden dash and captured the British post at Orangeburg. He was now between Camden and Charles Town. Rawdon, at Camden, became uneasy.

Marion's Men Harass the British.—Marion and "Light-Horse Harry"

Lee united their forces and attacked Fort Watson, near the Santee. This British fort contained a mound, and from this little hill the British soldiers could shoot any American who appeared on the plain below. One

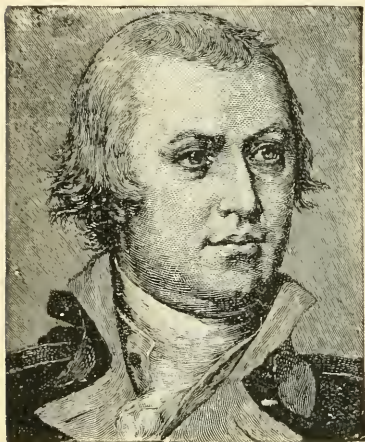
of Marion's officers, Colonel Maham, directed his men to cut a number of logs. During the night these logs were carried close to the fort and laid crosswise upon one another to form a high tower. From the top of



"LIGHT HORSE HARRY" LEE

the tower Marion's men were able to fire at the men in the fort and the place was soon taken.

British Gradually Driven into Charles Town. — The post at Motte's, on the Congaree, was another British stronghold. The chief part of the post was a house from which the British had driven the owner, Mrs. Rebecca Motte. When Marion and Lee attacked the post, Mrs. Motte herself showed them how to set fire to the roof of the building by means of arrows which had

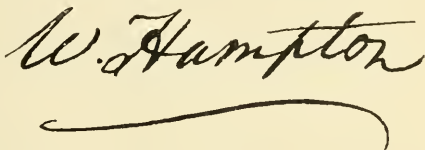


NATHANAEL GREENE

been sent to her from India. When the flames burst forth above the heads of the British troops, they surrendered. The fire was afterwards put out and the house of the heroic woman was saved. The post at Granby, near the site of the present Columbia, was also taken from the British.

Then Sumter called the forces of Pickens, Marion, and Lee to join his own horsemen and rode swiftly towards Charles Town. Wade Hampton and Lee led the advance. They fought their way to Quinby Bridge, a point within four miles of the city. The British forces were too

strong, and Sumter slowly fell back towards the highlands. His capture of British forts and soldiers compelled Rawdon to leave Camden and turn towards Charles Town. Greene had come again into South Carolina, but Rawdon drove him off the field at Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden. Greene tried to take Ninety-Six from the British, but failed. Then, as the British army drew nigh to the coast, Greene attacked them at Eutaw Springs, near the lower Santee, and was again repulsed.


 A handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "W. Hampton". Below the signature is a long, horizontal, slightly wavy flourish line.

THE AUTOGRAPH OF GENERAL HAMPTON

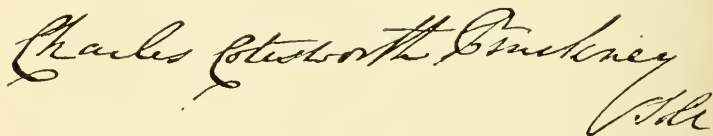
Wade Hampton by fierce fighting kept the British back in their pursuit of the American army.

The British forces were soon compelled to take refuge in Charles Town. They had been driven out of South Carolina chiefly by Sumter, Marion, and Pickens, and their gallant followers. These men saved their own state, but they also did much more than that. They held back Cornwallis so long from making his march northward, and they crippled his army so severely, that Washington was enabled to bring his forces southward to Yorktown in Virginia and there capture Cornwallis and his men. The Carolinians thus had a large share in the work of winning American independence.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

SOUTH CAROLINA BECOMES A STATE IN THE UNION.

Charles Cotesworth Pinckney. — The eldest son of Chief Justice Charles Pinckney and of Elizabeth Lucas, his wife, was given the name Charles Cotesworth. He was born in 1746, and while he was still a mere boy he was taken by his father to England. His brother Thomas and his young friend, William Henry Drayton, bore

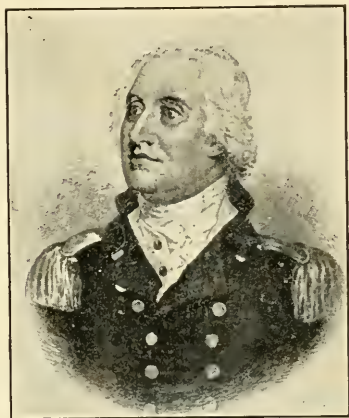
A handwritten signature in cursive script, reading "Charles Cotesworth Pinckney". The signature is written in dark ink on a light background. The letters are fluid and connected, with a prominent initial 'C' and a long, sweeping underline.

THE AUTOGRAPH OF CHARLES C. PINCKNEY

him company. These lads became pupils in the Westminster school, near Westminster Abbey, in the city of London. Dressed like English boys, they studied lessons and played games with the other lads in the great city. They went next to the University of Oxford, where Charles Cotesworth Pinckney made rapid progress in the study of Latin. He returned to London and was there trained as a lawyer.

When this training was completed, young Pinckney came back to Charleston and put on the black silk gown which lawyers then wore, and went into the court room to play well his part before the judges and the

juries. Nobly did he carry out the wishes of his father, as written in the latter's will, that Charles Cotesworth would "employ all his future abilities in the service of God and his country," and that as a lawyer he would never speak in favor of "irreligion, injustice, or wrong, oppression or tyranny of any kind, public or private."



CHARLES COTESWORTH PINCKNEY

Pinckney's Service during the Revolution. — In the autumn of 1769, when war with England was in the air, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney took his seat as a member of the legislature in Charles Town. On that same day Patrick Calhoun was sworn in as a member from the upper country. When the war of the Revolution began Pinckney became a member of the Provincial Congress. Then he buckled on his sword. His first important service was the setting up of a battery which drove the British war vessels out of Charles Town Harbor; this was followed by the building of Moultrie's famous fort on Sullivan's Island.

In 1780 Pinckney was in command of Fort Moultrie. The British war ships sailed past the fort, however, and

threw their shells into Charles Town. He came to help his people to defend the city, and was not willing to surrender when General Lincoln gave up the fight. But Pinckney had to yield himself along with the rest, and was kept by the British as a prisoner until the close of the war.

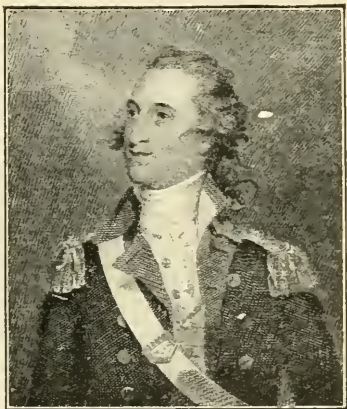
A Meeting of the South Carolina Legislature. — On the



FORT MOULTRIE

18th day of January, 1782, there was much excitement in the little village of Jacksonborough, located on the western bank of the Edisto River, about thirty-five miles from Charles Town. The legislature of South Carolina met that day in the village. Many noble patriots were there, called together by Gov. John Rutledge. Still wearing their military clothes, some of them cut and scarred by wounds received in battle, the soldiers of Carolina were there as lawmakers. Pickens was then

in the Cherokee country fighting the Indians. But Sumter, Marion, the Calhouns, the Hamptons, Thomson, Hill, Winn, Lacey, Thomas, Taylor, Hammond, Gervais, and Kershaw were present to speak for the middle and upper country. From the lower country came the Pinckneys, Gadsden, Moultrie, Heyward, the Rutledges, Harden, Baxter, Postell, and the Horrys. Most of these gallant leaders had been made prisoners when Charles Town fell, and during the rest of the war had suffered all the horrors of prison life on British war ships and in dungeons at St. Augustine, Florida. The people of every section of the



THOMAS PINCKNEY

state were represented in this body of lawmakers. It was the first time that this had ever taken place. South Carolina was now an independent state, and from the sea to the mountains her people were now more closely united than ever before in all their history.

Thomas Pinckney as Governor. — Let us now look forward a few years to the 24th of February, 1787. On that day Thomas Pinckney was made governor of the commonwealth. Charles Town had had, in 1783,

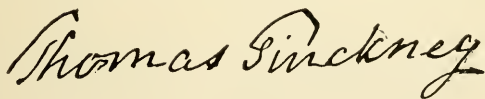
its name changed to Charleston, but it was still the capital city. A procession was formed, with the sheriff in front bearing the sword of state. Behind him walked the new governor and all the lawmakers. The march was taken up through the Senate chamber until the head of the crowd reached the balcony. There the herald called out in a loud voice to the people in the street below that Thomas Pinckney was governor of the state of South Carolina.

The Pinckneys as Members of the Federal Convention, 1787.—A few months later, that is, in May, 1787, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney took his seat in the famous convention that met in the city of Philadelphia. The other delegates from South Carolina were Charles Cotesworth's cousin, Charles Pinckney, John Rutledge, Henry Laurens, and Pierce Butler. Representatives were present from all but one of the thirteen States, and among them were the most famous men in America at that time. George Washington was president of the body. Its purpose was to form the independent States into a republic. Many plans for a constitution were offered. Charles Pinckney, who was then under thirty years of age, presented a plan to the convention very much like that which was finally adopted. The debates were serious and ran through many months. John Rutledge and Charles Cotesworth Pinckney spoke often. The other members were always ready to listen to their advice. They had a large share in the work of preparing

the great document known as the Constitution of the United States, which was completed by the convention in September, 1787.

South Carolina Ratifies the Federal Constitution. —

On the 12th of May, 1788, a convention met in Charleston. The members of this convention had been elected by the people of the various districts of South Carolina. Governor Thomas Pinckney sat in the chair as president of the body. Upon the table in front of the president was laid a large paper document. It was a copy of the Constitution of the United States, prepared by the Philadelphia convention, during the previous year. The question under discussion in the Charleston meeting was this: "Shall we give our consent to this Constitution?" Thomas Sumter and some other members from the upper country said, "No." The Rutledges, Moultrie, William Washington, who was then a citizen of Charleston, and many others, said that the convention ought to adopt the Constitution. The leaders of this party were Charles Cotesworth Pinckney and Charles Pinckney, who had



THE AUTOGRAPH OF GOVERNOR PINCKNEY

helped to frame the Constitution in Philadelphia. Charles Cotesworth Pinckney spoke often and earnestly. He explained and pleaded and persuaded.

Largely through his influence the convention adopted the Constitution. On the 23d of May, 1788, Thomas Pinckney, as president, signed the adopting act, and thus South Carolina became a member of the federal republic known as the United States.

PART III.

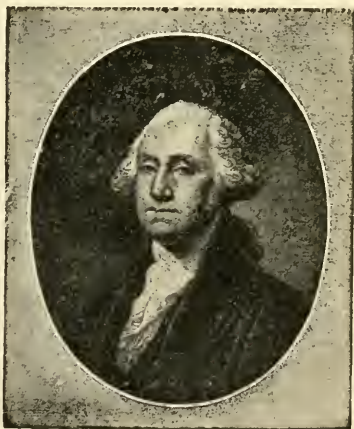
THE MEN OF THE COMMONWEALTH.

1789 – 1860

CHAPTER XXXIV

THOMAS PINCKNEY AS MINISTER TO ENGLAND.

President Washington in South Carolina. — At an early hour one morning in the month of May, 1791, George Washington, first President of the United States, rode out of Georgetown, South Carolina. He was seated in a carriage whose doors and sides were painted in beautiful colors. In the carriage, also, by the side of the president sat Thomas Pinckney, former governor of the commonwealth. Four fine horses drew them along



From the painting by Stuart

GEORGE WASHINGTON

at a lively pace. Other carriages followed, and a number of gentlemen galloped behind on horseback. The horses' heads were turned southward. The travelers were borne in ferryboats across the North Santee and South Santee. Great fields of rice were spread out on each side as they dashed along. At a distance of fifteen miles from Georgetown, the party turned aside from the public highway, and drove through a long lane to a handsome house that stood on the southern bank of the Santee. Beneath the portico, whose roof was upheld by tall pillars, a group of Carolina women was waiting to receive the president. They wore silk sashes upon which were painted words of welcome. The central figure in the group was the widow of Chief Justice Pinckney, whom we first learned to know as Elizabeth Lucas. By her side stood her daughter, the widow of Col. Daniel Horry and the owner of the house in which they were assembled.

Mrs. Pinckney's son, Thomas Pinckney, climbed down from the coach, and then helped General Washington to alight. When the president ascended the steps of the portico he greeted the noble dames in a solemn, stately manner. It was eleven o'clock in the morning, and the entire company entered the large room called the ball-room, and sat down at the long breakfast table. A little army of colored men, women, and boys came in a steady procession, bearing huge covered dishes from the kitchen. Back and forth they passed in quiet haste,

bringing to the guests the various parts of the bountiful feast.

When President Washington stood again beneath the portico in readiness to depart, a strong, young oak was pointed out to him. It stood so near the house that the owner had made up her mind to cut it down. The president advised her not to do so, as he said that an oak is a thing which no man can make. The tree is still standing and is known to this day as "Washington's Oak."

In his solemn way, General Washington bade farewell to the aged Mrs. Pinckney and told the driver to turn the heads of the horses towards Charleston. Forty miles was the distance, but the whips cracked and away the party sped. At the gates of the city the president was greeted by Governor Charles Pinckney, Gen. William Moultrie, Charles C. Pinckney, and his kinsman, Col. William Washington. A great ball was given in Washington's honor at the Exchange. We are told that four hundred beautiful women were present. On the 9th of May, 1791, President Washington set forth toward Savannah. On the 22d of May he entered Columbia on his return journey northward. This new town on the Congaree River had, in 1786, become the capital of South Carolina. The loyal devotion of the people of the commonwealth toward Washington was shown in the reception and dinner which they gave him in the new State House on the 23d of May.

Thomas Pinckney Becomes Minister to England. — In the year that followed the journey through the South, that is, in 1792, President Washington asked Thomas Pinckney to go to London as minister or ambassador to England from the United States. Washington knew that no other man in our whole country was so well qualified to fill this position as Thomas Pinckney. Let us now recall the way in which the latter had spent his life.

Some Facts in the Early Life of Thomas Pinckney. — Thomas Pinckney, second son of Charles Pinckney and Elizabeth Lucas, was born in 1750. At the age of three years, he was taken to England. At Westminster school, in London, he was the leader of his class in the study of Greek. He never forgot that Carolina was his home. He spoke so often about his native land as a better country than England that his schoolmates called him "the little rebel." He then went to Oxford University and afterwards studied law in London. A military school in France brought him to the end of his courses of study, and in 1775 young Pinckney became a lawyer in Charles Town.

When the war of the Revolution began, Thomas Pinckney became a soldier. All day long for many months at Charles Town, he taught his young countrymen how to carry their muskets and how to march in companies and regiments. In his tent until late at night he would read his favorite books in Greek. The next morning early he took up again the work of drilling

soldiers. In addition to this, Thomas Pinckney made plans for the defence of Charles Town. The selection of places for the building of forts and the establishment of batteries and breastworks were left largely to him. He fought at Savannah in 1779, and at Camden (1780) his



From an old engraving

THE STATE HOUSE AT COLUMBIA IN 1794

leg was shattered by a musket ball. He got well in time to join Washington's army in the trenches before Yorktown. We have already seen him in the office of governor of South Carolina (1787-1789) and as president of the convention (1788) that made her one of the States of the Federal Union.

Pinckney in London. — When Thomas Pinckney went to London (1792), he found that the king of England

was not glad to see him. All of the officers of the British government were very cold in their manner toward the American ambassador. They did not wish to have anything to do with a man who came from a country which had so recently defeated England in war. The new American republic was not yet strong, and the British rulers thought that they would pay very little attention to Minister Pinckney.

Thomas Pinckney faced the duties of his position with courage and with good sense. He was a man of learning and of dignity. His manner was courteous and polite to all whom he met. When George the Third held receptions at his palace, Pinckney went every time to see the king and his courtiers. Pinckney said that the king himself never failed to talk with him a few moments at each reception, but the talk was always about the weather or some other harmless subject. The queen always gave Pinckney a polite smile, spoke a few words to him, and then turned away to talk to others.

While Pinckney was still among the English looking after the interests of his countrymen, President Washington sent him to take charge of some important matters in Spain. The latter then held possession of Florida and the mouth of the Mississippi River. Pinckney was a man of such good judgment and wisdom that he persuaded the Spaniards to allow American boats to enter the Mississippi. At the same time he made an agreement about the northern boundary line of Florida.

Thomas Pinckney's Return Home. — After a few years of hard work in London, Pinckney asked Washington to let him return home. Washington was slow to give his consent. Then he asked Pinckney to go as minister to France, thus offering to the Carolinian from first to last positions as ambassador to England, Spain, and France. In a letter to Pinckney Washington said, "The task of supplying your place to my satisfaction, to the satisfaction of your country, or of the court, you will learn, will not be found easy."

Pinckney's kindness and courage, his courtesy that never failed, won for him at last the respect and good will of the king and queen of England and of all the people of that country. When he came again to Charleston the people of that city went forth to meet him. The horses were unhitched from his carriage, ropes were attached to it, and his fellow-citizens drew him through the streets with loud shouts and cheers.

Charles C. and Thomas Pinckney in Their Later Years. — During their later years the two brothers, Charles C. and Thomas Pinckney, were closely joined together in their work. The elder, Charles C., was sent as American envoy to France, in 1797, with Elbridge Gerry and John Marshall. The French rulers wanted the Americans to offer money as a bribe to secure the friendship of the French. Charles C. Pinckney in rejecting the proposal used the famous words, "No, no, not a sixpence!" Afterwards Charles C.

Pinckney was a candidate, once for the vice-presidency, and twice for the presidency of the United States.

After his return from England Thomas Pinckney ran as candidate for the vice-presidency of the United States (1796). Then during a period of four years (1797--1801) he represented his state in Congress. In December, 1801, the legislature passed an act to establish a college at Columbia, and on the tenth of January, 1805, the South Carolina College opened her doors and began her great work. Charles C. Pinckney was a member of the first group of trustees. In 1812, when the second war with England began, Thomas Pinckney was made a major-general and placed in command of the Southern Department of the United States. This did not bring him into any serious battles or marches. General Pinckney afterwards sought the banks of the lower Santee, and there among the rice fields built for himself and family a spacious home. He gave to it the name Eldorado, which means golden, because the lands all about him seemed to be one great yellow field of buttercups. He died there in the year 1828. Three years before that time, his brother, Charles C., had passed away.

CHAPTER XXXV.

WILLIAM LOWNDES, THE WISE STATESMAN.

William Lowndes. — William Lowndes was the son of Rawlins Lowndes. He was born in the year 1782, at Horseshoe plantation, in Colleton County. When William was seven years of age, his mother took him across the sea to London, and there sent him to school. At that time the child's eyes were blue, his fair hair hung in curls, and his cheeks were like roses. One day he was playing ball with his schoolmates, but grew tired and sat down upon a bank to rest. He fell asleep. Snow came upon the sleeping lad and chilled him to the bone. Rheumatism and fever seized him and held him for many days. Finally the fever left him, but during the rest of his life William Lowndes never had much physical strength.

The boy's mind, however, seemed brighter than ever before. He returned to his home in South Carolina and continued to attend school. Sometimes he was so weak in body that he was carried to the schoolroom in a chair. Many a time he had to lie down on a bench to recite. His memory grew stronger as he grew older. He was especially quick and rapid in gaining a knowledge of Latin. Lowndes soon left school and began to study law, and at the age of nineteen became a lawyer in Charleston.

William Lowndes was then very tall, being six feet and six inches in height. Across the shoulders he was narrow and his whole frame was lean and thin. In spite of his bad health, Lowndes was always cheerful. His



THE HOME OF WILLIAM LOWNDES

memory was wonderfully strong and clear. We are told that after one reading he could repeat long passages from the pages of a book.

Lowndes took great pleasure in riding over his rice farm to watch the growing crop. In 1802 he married

Elizabeth, the daughter of Governor Thomas Pinckney. Then he gave up his business as a lawyer and turned his whole attention to the work of planting rice. In 1806, however, he went to Columbia to sit for a short time among the Carolina lawmakers. In 1807, when there was talk of another war with England, a company of soldiers was organized in Charleston. William Lowndes was chosen captain. The company called itself the Washington Light Infantry, in honor of George Washington.

South Carolinians in Congress in 1811. — Near the close of the year 1811, four representatives from South Carolina took their seats in Congress in the city of Washington. These were John C. Calhoun, Langdon Cheves, David R. Williams, and William Lowndes. These men all attracted attention to themselves in Congress on account of their sound sense and wisdom. Within a few months they were considered as among the leaders in that great body of lawmakers.

Lowndes and Calhoun did much of their work in Washington together. They wished to see the Federal Republic become strong. They wanted to see a larger trade with countries across the sea. Others who knew them at that time tell us about an old brown book filled with maps. Calhoun and Lowndes were often seen bending over these maps, with their heads close together, drawing lines with their fingers and eagerly debating as to where public roads and canals

should be made.¹ It was the strong desire of both these men to see all parts of our country bound together by highways. They had a special hope that lines of trade would be established between the Atlantic coast and the great West.

Lowndes's Record in Congress. — The speech made by Lowndes urging the lawmakers to establish a strong army and navy placed him among the best speakers in Congress. From that time he often held the floor either against or in support of such great statesmen as Webster, Clay, and Calhoun. All over our country people began to talk about the wise and patriotic Lowndes of South Carolina.

On the 6th of December, 1820, Lowndes arose to speak. His long face was thin and pale. His hair had become black. From every part of the hall the members came crowding around him. They did not wish to lose one of his words. The whole body of lawmakers was excited over the question of slavery in the new state of

¹ In the year 1800 a boat passed for the first time through the Santee Canal, which connected the Santee and Cooper rivers. This canal was twenty-two miles in length and cost more than thirty thousand dollars a mile. It was made by an incorporated company, organized in 1786, with General William Moultrie as president. The cost of the work was paid in full by the stockholders, who were South Carolinians. From 1800 until 1850 large quantities of cotton were carried every year in boats from the upper waters of the Broad and Catawba rivers through the canal to Charleston. When the South Carolina Railroad was completed from Charleston to Columbia and afterwards to Camden (1850), the canal was closed. It was the second canal made in our whole country.

Missouri. The Federal Union was in danger. Lowndes loved the Union and wished to preserve it. His manner was marked by dignity. He was courteous to all. He spoke with calmness, setting forth the facts involved in the case. He appealed for justice in behalf of the people of the South and "was listened to as to the oracles of truth." The very honesty of the man, combined with his wisdom, led many to vote with him. He did much that day to uphold the rights of the Southern people and to save the Federal Union.



W. Lowndes

A year later William Lowndes was named by the legislature of South Carolina as a suitable man for the presidency of the United States. At the same time others named John C. Calhoun for the same high office. These two were then living together in the same house in Washington, and were in the habit of walking side by side every day back and forth to the halls of Congress. When both were nominated for the presidency, their friendship for each other continued as before. Every day the two tall Carolinians were

still seen walking side by side to and from the Capitol.

The work of William Lowndes, however, was nearly done. When his strength had wellnigh failed, he set sail for Europe in October, 1822, in search of health. When the ship was far out upon the Atlantic, he died and his body was buried beneath the waters of the ocean.

During the forty years of his life, William Lowndes rendered a large service to his state and his country. He was "amiable, talented, patriotic," said his bosom friend Calhoun. Henry Clay, the great Kentucky statesman, said, "I think the wisest man I ever knew was William Lowndes."

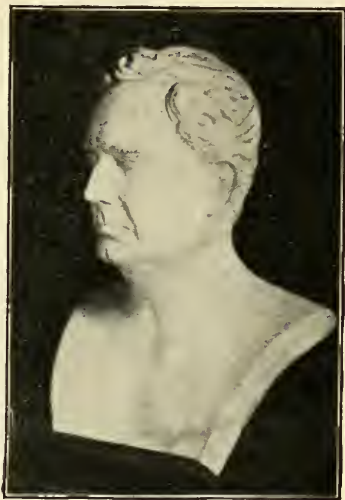
CHAPTER XXXVI.

LANGDON CHEVES, LAWMAKER, JUDGE, AND BANKER.

Childhood of Langdon Cheves. — Alexander Cheves was a Scot who lived on Rocky River, in the present Abbeville County. He carried on a brisk trade with the Indians, giving them hatchets, blankets, and other articles in exchange for the skins of wild animals. The name of his wife was Mary Langdon. On the 17th of September, 1776, in a log building on Rocky River, the son of these frontier settlers was born. They gave him his mother's name, Langdon.

The first ten years of the life of the child Langdon were spent in the fields and woods around his father's home. Then he went to Charleston and became a clerk in a store. From the work of selling goods he was advanced to the position of keeping account-books. He wrote up the books in a good style of penmanship.

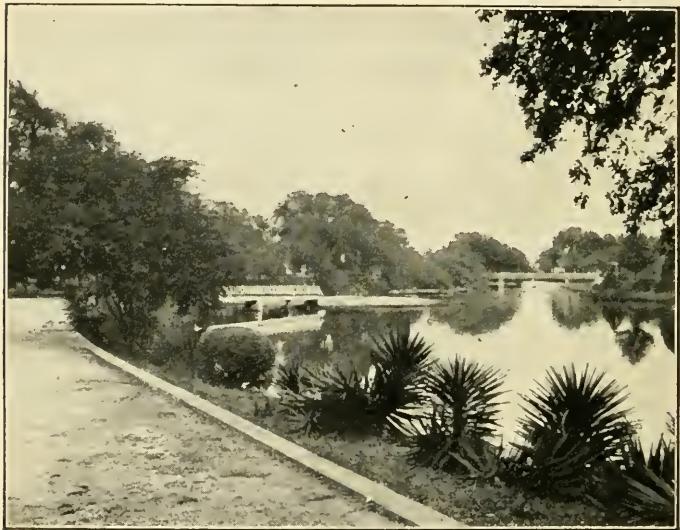
When Cheves was eighteen he entered the courthouse one day and heard Judge William Marshall make a speech. That speech decided his course. He made up his mind that he would be a lawyer.



LANGDON CHEVES

Some South Carolina Lawyers. — Cheves went into the law office of Marshall, in Charleston, and began to read law books. Three years later he became a lawyer. Cheves was then about five feet ten inches in height, with a strong frame and a fine, large head. He worked without resting and success came at once. The famous lawyers and judges of South Carolina in that day were the Pinckneys, Hugh Rutledge, H. W. de Saussure,

Theodore Gaillard, John F. Grimké, and his son, Thomas S. Grimké, Thomas Waties, John J. Pringle, Lewis Trezevant, Samuel Wilds, William Smith, John S. Richardson, and many more. Into this circle Langdon



MAGNOLIA CEMETERY, CHARLESTON

Cheves entered, and in ten years he drew into his hands more business than any other lawyer in Charleston. He was the leader among them all.

Cheves in Congress. — In 1811 he entered Congress as the representative from Charleston. His associates, as we have seen, were Lowndes, Calhoun, and Williams. Cheves was at once made chairman of the com-

mittee to look after the American navy. He soon afterwards proposed that a larger number of war ships be built and that the seacoast should be fortified.

When Cheves made a speech he always showed a full and accurate knowledge of the subject about which he was talking. Clearness marked everything that he said. On one occasion he made a speech in reply to Daniel Webster and completely defeated the man from Massachusetts. In 1814 Cheves was chosen by his fellow-members to be speaker of the House of Representatives, the highest position in the body of lawmakers at Washington.

Cheves as Judge. — Two years later (1816) Cheves became a judge in the law courts of South Carolina. The same habit of work, work all the time, marked his career as a judge. We are told that he often sat upon the bench in the courtroom from nine o'clock in the morning until nine o'clock at night without a break. He said that the law courts must attend to all the business brought before them, and do it promptly. "I work that I may rest," he was accustomed to say.

Cheves as a Banker. — In 1819 Cheves became the head of the Bank of the United States, and went to live in Philadelphia. In this position he had to take charge of large sums of money. The business of the bank had not been well managed, but Cheves made a great success of it.

The Last Years of Cheves. — About 1830, however, he returned to his native state and became a planter on the Savannah River. In this work, as in all his other



CONFEDERATE MONUMENT, MAGNOLIA
CEMETERY, CHARLESTON

undertakings, he met with great success. He died in the city of Columbia, June 26, 1857, in the eighty-first year of his age. His body was borne to Charleston and laid to rest in Magnolia Cemetery. A great company of people from that city and from the rest of the commonwealth assembled at his tomb to show honor to his name. "Cheves

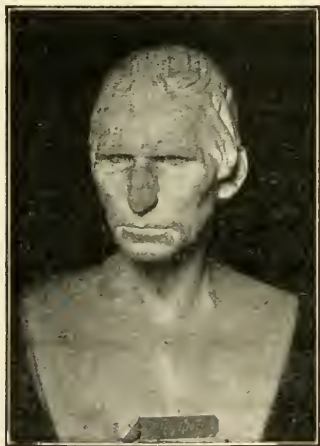
loved truth, and to it he sacrificed everything," said one who knew him well.

Sophia Cheves. — Sophia Langdon Cheves, daughter of Langdon Cheves, became the wife of Charles Thomson Haskell, grandson of Col. William Thomson, of Orangeburg. The sons of Sophia Cheves, bearing the honored name of Haskell, rendered gallant service on many of the battlefields of the Confederate War.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

GEORGE McDUFFIE'S OPPOSITION TO UNJUST
FEDERAL LAWS.

Childhood of McDuffie. — Georgia was the birthplace of George McDuffie (1788). Long afterwards, when he made a visit to his early home in the country, he pointed out the tree beneath whose shade he had often as a boy played the game called "Knucks." At an early age McDuffie became clerk in a store in Augusta, Georgia, owned by James Calhoun, a brother of John C. Calhoun. The boy's mind was so bright, and he was so eager to learn, that his employer said that he must go to school. William, another of the Calhoun brothers, then sent the lad to Moses Waddel's Academy. A small pine box, whose lid was fastened by means of a leather strap and a nail, held all of McDuffie's clothing when he left Augusta and crossed the Savannah River to begin his studies.



GEORGE McDUFFIE

Waddel's School where McDuffie Was a Student. —

Doctor Waddel's school was located among oak and hickory trees upon a high ridge near the Calhoun settlement in the present Abbeville County, South Carolina. Some of the most famous men of South Carolina were taught by Waddel. Among these were John C. Calhoun, Hugh S. Legaré, James L. Petigru, Pickens Butler, Patrick Noble, and others. When McDuffie entered there were about one hundred and eighty pupils in the school. There was a central building in which recitations were heard. The boys of the school lived, however, in log cabins that were scattered about in the grove. The food given to them was cornbread and bacon. A horn called them together for morning and evening prayers. When the weather was warm the students sat or lay down under the trees to prepare their lessons. If they were thirsty they went to the foot of the hill and with a cup made of broad hickory leaves dipped water from the spring. The sound of the horn told each class when to assemble in the presence of the teacher.

The Greek of Homer and the Latin of Virgil and Cicero were studied by George McDuffie in that log academy in the forest. He was so earnest and eager in work that it was not long before he was standing at the head of all his classes.

McDuffie at South Carolina College. — In December, 1811, McDuffie went to Columbia and entered South Carolina College. In a very short time he took his place

as the brightest and most successful pupil in the junior class. As a member of the Clariosophic Society he showed skill and strength in public speaking. The other literary society in the college was called the



LIBRARY, SOUTH CAROLINA COLLEGE

Euphradian Society. He finished his course of study by taking the first honor. His speech at the time of graduation was on the "Permanence of the Union."

McDuffie Enters Politics. — McDuffie's next work was the reading of law books. In May, 1814, he became a lawyer and went to live at Pendleton, in the present

Oconee County. Then he went to Edgefield and became the partner in law practice of Col. Eldred Simkins. The library of Colonel Simkins was thrown open to McDuffie and he used it with a will. Great success came to him as a lawyer. In a short time he made many friends and had a great rush of business. He was held to be among the best lawyers of South Carolina. The year 1818 found him in the state legislature, and in 1821 he was sent to Congress by the people of Edgefield and Abbeville. He continued to be one of the leading members of that body of lawmakers until 1834.

McDuffie as a Speaker. — Whenever it became known in Washington that George McDuffie was to make a speech the galleries of the legislative hall were soon filled with people who were eager to see and hear him. He was slender and rather inclined to stoop. His eyes were sunken and of a bluish-gray. While among his friends he was a man of few words, of quiet, reserved manner, and was never known to jest or smile; now upon the floor, face to face with his audience, McDuffie's eyes soon began to flash, his face became full of light, his words poured forth like a rushing stream, and his body was straightened, erect and in continual motion. His face showed that he was under the power of strong feeling. With clenched fists he pounded the air. But his line of thought was clear and his words were as strong as those of his favorite writer, John Milton. He uttered the deep convictions of his heart with so great earnestness

and boldness that he nearly always persuaded his audience to think as he did.

McDuffie Opposes High Tariff and Favors Nullification. — McDuffie's life in Congress was one long fight against placing a high tariff, or tax, on goods brought into the United States from foreign lands. The Southern planters had to buy these goods, and of course they had to pay the tax laid upon them. McDuffie said that this system was not fair or just, because it made the South pay most of the taxes collected by the government at Washington. A convention of the people of South Carolina was called together in Columbia in November, 1832. This body met in the State House. James Hamilton, Jr., the talented young governor of South Carolina, was elected president of the convention. George McDuffie was, however, the most influential man present. Resolutions were written out and adopted, declaring that South Carolina would not obey the tariff law passed by Congress. This resolution of the convention is known as the Ordinance of Nullification. After the vote was taken in the convention the written ordinance was spread on the table. Seven aged members of the body, who had been soldiers during the Revolution, walked forward to sign the paper first. The other members then signed it in alphabetical order. When this ordinance was passed, President Jackson declared that he would use force to collect the tax. But Henry Clay appealed to the lawmakers in the Congress at

Washington and the latter adopted Clay's Compromise Tariff and thus reduced the unjust tax. Thus the question in dispute was peaceably arranged.

During all these years McDuffie was doing his work as a lawyer. He went from one courthouse to another throughout the state. The people always assembled in a great crowd to hear him speak before a judge and jury. McDuffie was equal to the task of meeting in argument such great lawyers of that day as John Belton O'Neill, who became Chief Justice, James L. Petigru, William C. Preston, William Harper, who became chancellor, and Hugh Swinton Legaré.

McDuffie, Governor and Senator. — From 1834 until 1836 McDuffie held the office of governor. Then in 1842 he was sent to the Senate of the United States. While in that position he helped to make Texas one of the states of the Federal Union. After four years in the Senate he gave up the office on account of bad health.

McDuffie's Later Years. — Many years before that time some unwise friends had persuaded him to take part in a duel with pistols. He was wounded in the fight and the wound helped to break down his physical strength. George McDuffie's later years were spent at his country house, named Cherry Hill, located about one mile from Doctor Waddel's Academy in what is now Abbeville County. From the broad verandas of his house he could look upon the Savannah River and the plains of Georgia beyond. Around the house were gar-

dens filled with fruits and flowers. There he died in 1851. His wife, the daughter of Col. Richard Singleton, had passed away long before. She left an only daughter, who became the wife of Gen. Wade Hampton.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

ROBERT YONGE HAYNE IN THE UNITED STATES SENATE.

Robert Yonge Hayne. — Robert Y. Hayne was born in Colleton District, South Carolina, Nov. 10, 1791. He was the son of a planter. A grammar school in Charleston gave him the elements of his education. There he read law books in the office of Langdon Cheves and became a lawyer. The War of 1812 called him into the field, for a time, as a soldier. Then he went back to the law courts and became one of the most successful lawyers in Carolina.

Hayne began his work as lawmaker in the state legislature (1814). He was chosen speaker of the House (1818). In 1822 he was sent to the Senate of the United States, and retained that position until he was chosen governor in 1832. He died in 1839. During most of the period of Hayne's senatorship, Calhoun sat in the chair as vice-president, while Hayne stood on the floor of the Senate as the chief advocate of South Carolina and the South.

The Hayne and Webster Debate. — In January, 1830, the most famous debate in the history of our country

took place in the Senate chamber between Robert Y. Hayne and Daniel Webster. On the 20th of January Webster made a speech which gave offence to the



ROBERT YONGE HAYNE

Senators from South Carolina and the South. The following day Hayne arose to answer Webster's charges, but Webster asked that the discussion be postponed a week. Hayne did not wish to wait. Laying his hand on his heart, Hayne said he had something there he wished to get rid of. The gentleman had discharged

his fire in the face of the Senate, and he demanded an opportunity of returning the shot. Hayne then began his speech in reply to Webster. His friends were filled with joy at the brilliant beginning. They told one another that the Carolinian would win the victory.

On Monday, January 25th, Hayne continued his speech. There was great excitement in Washington, and for two or three days great numbers of people had been rushing into the city. When the Senate met at twelve o'clock the floors, lobbies, and galleries of the Senate Chamber were crowded with spectators. The doorways and stairways were filled with men, like swarming bees.

Senator Hayne was of medium height and rather slender in body. His hair was light brown. A great light seemed to be shining from his face as he arose to answer the Massachusetts senator. His manner was courteous and his voice rang out like a trumpet, clear and distinct. Hayne's expressions were so full of feeling that the great audience was moved. For four hours they seemed to hang upon the words that poured from his lips. An eye-witness, who believed that Hayne was "the most formidable of Webster's opponents," has told us that he dashed into debate "like cavalry upon a charge. There was a gallant air about him that could not but win admiration. He never provided for retreat; he never imagined it. He had an invincible confidence in himself which arose, partly from constitutional temperament, partly from previous success. His was the Napoleonic warfare; to strike at once for the capital of the enemy."

"The people whom I represent," said Hayne, "are the descendants of those who brought with them to this country, as the most precious of their possessions, an ardent love of liberty." The Carolinians were friends of the Union, declared Hayne; they believed that the Union should continue to be a republic such as it was when the fathers founded it. "And who are its enemies?" he cried. "Those who are constantly stealing power from the States and adding strength to the Federal Government."

With all his strength Hayne threw back upon Webster the charges made by the latter against the South. The Carolinian declared, as he took his seat, that his people were "animated by that ardent love of liberty which has always been the most prominent trait in the Southern character."

The next day (26th) Webster made his chief address in reply to Hayne. It had a great effect upon the crowd assembled in the Senate Chamber. But from this time onward the men of the South held up their heads by reason of the strong, clear answer made by Hayne to the enemies of the South. They were proud of their champion and of their country

CHAPTER XXXIX.

JOHN CALDWELL CALHOUN'S SERVICE TO HIS COUNTRY.

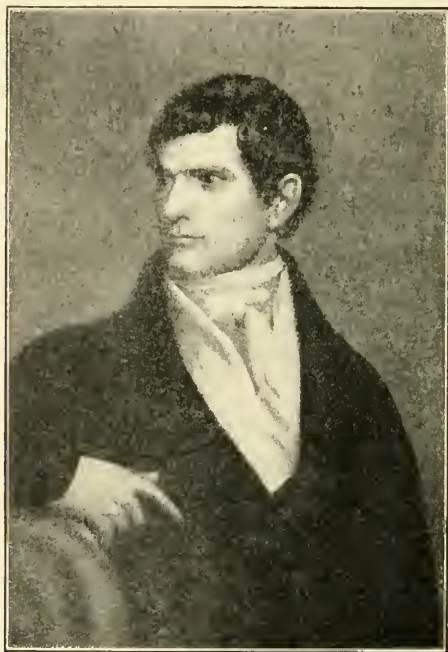
Calhoun's Childhood. — John Caldwell Calhoun was born in a two-story frame house in the Calhoun settlement, in Abbeville District, March 18, 1782. His father was Patriek Calhoun, and his mother was Martha Caldwell, a daughter of John Caldwell, a surveyor. The child John grew up tall and slim, with bright eyes and long, tangled hair. As a boy he worked in the corn-field by the side of his father. At the close of the day, in winter, he sat by the wide, deep fireplace in

the house and listened to his father's stories about the days of the Revolution.

Calhoun's School Days. — One Sunday, when John was about twelve years of age, a young minister named Moses Waddel came across the Savannah River and preached in a schoolhouse near the Calhoun settlement. Patrick Calhoun, the patriarch of the village, took the preacher home with him. By the fireside that night young Calhoun met his first teacher. Waddel afterwards married young Catharine Calhoun. Then John went to Georgia to live in his sister's home and to receive instruction from his brother-in-law, Waddel. Fourteen weeks were given to the reading of some books of ancient history. Then his eyes grew weak and the books were closed. John's father died, and the fourteen-year-old boy went home to his mother. She saw that he was pale and thin, and she sent him out into the woods to hunt and fish. He went also into the fields and plowed among the corn. Four years were spent thus in the busy life of the farm. John grew up a quiet lad, with little to say. He did not care to play games with the other boys in the village, but chose, rather, to go off into the forest with a gun as his only companion.

When John reached the age of eighteen he made up his mind to be a planter. But his brother, a merchant then living in Charleston, came home on a visit and urged him to go to school. The other members of the family were ready to help him. In June, 1800, there-

fore, he again entered Waddel's school, opened a Latin book and went to work upon it. This was his first real attempt to study, and he was then in his nineteenth



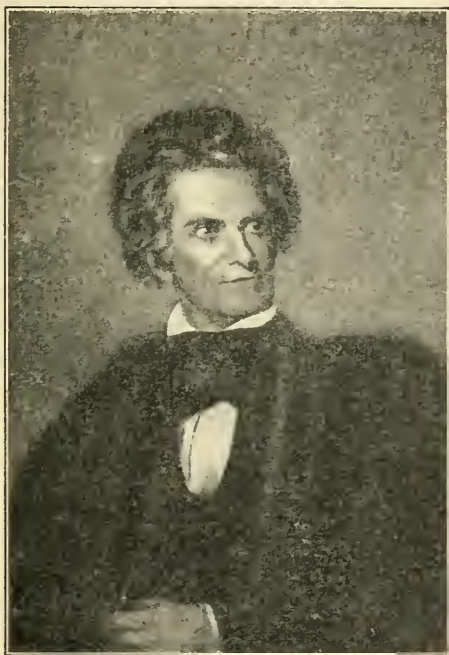
From a portrait

CALHOUN IN EARLY LIFE

year. Doctor Waddel was surprised at the quick way in which John learned Latin and mathematics.

Calhoun at Yale University. — In two years he was ready to enter the junior class at Yale College. The

country lad soon found that he could easily stand first there among his fellow-students. When they were asked to work out problems in arithmetic or algebra,



From a portrait

CALHOUN IN MATURITY

Calhoun was always the first to finish the task and hand his slate to the teacher. When President Dwight heard him in the class room, he said that Calhoun was likely to become president of the United States. In

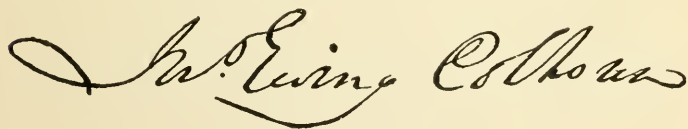
two years he completed the course of study at Yale (1804). His mind was bright and strong. He had learned how to use his tongue, and his manner of talking drew men to him. The purity and honesty of Calhoun's character made him the chief leader of the whole body of students.

Calhoun a Lawyer. — Calhoun made up his mind to be a lawyer. He did not find pleasure, however, in the reading of law books. Such reading he called a "dry and solitary journey." He loved to read books of history. Steadily and faithfully, however, he continued to work at his task. Three years were given to the study of law, a part of the time in Litchfield, Connecticut, and a part of the time in the office of Chancellor H. W. de Saussure, a leading lawyer of Charleston. Then in 1807 he put his name on a long board and nailed the board to the outside wall of a little building in the village of Abbeville. In this manner he began his work as a lawyer among the people of his native district. These came in large numbers to put their business into his hands. We are told that in those early days the tall young man of twenty-five was often seen standing in the street outside of his office, cutting a stick with his pocket knife and talking with a group of farmers about the questions of the hour.

Calhoun's Attitude towards England. — About mid-summer of the year 1807 news came that stirred the people of the upper country. The farmers came riding

into Abbeville to talk together about the recent outrage on the ocean, when the British war vessel *Leopard* fired a whole broadside of solid shot into the American ship *Chesapeake*. The people were excited and angry against England. John Caldwell Calhoun made a speech to a large crowd of citizens assembled in the street at Abbeville. His eyes flashed fire and his voice rang out in strong, indignant tones that touched the heart of every man present. The people had found their leader. They sent him to the state legislature for two years and then chose him to be a member of the body of lawmakers which sat in Congress at Washington.

Calhoun's Marriage. — Some years before this time, young Calhoun saw the bright eyes of his little cousin Floride Colhoun, and he could not forget them. Her mother took her to Newport, Rhode Island, and he went there to see her. When he was in Abbeville he often grew restless because he had to wait seventeen



THE AUTOGRAPH OF FLORIDE COLHOUN'S FATHER

days for a letter to be carried on horseback from Newport. On Jan. 11, 1811, there was a gathering of the members of the Calhoun family in a beautiful home among the rice plantations on the lower Santee River.

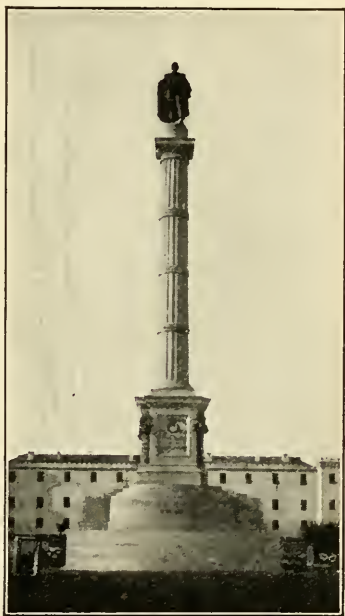
John and Floride there began their long, happy life together as man and wife.

Calhoun in Congress.—Near the close of the year 1811, Calhoun took his seat in Congress at Washington. In the latter part of December he arose to make his first speech to the members of that body. When he began to speak, he bent forward as if from diffidence; his words did not flow rapidly. But the embarrassment soon passed away, and he straightened his slender form to its full height, a head taller than most of the other members. His large eyes, dark blue in color, began to glow like coals of fire. The look from his eyes was so piercing that men sometimes thought that they gave out light in the dark. The forehead was broad, and the black hair was cut short and brushed back so that it stood up like bristles on the top of his head. His face seemed to shine with light and changed its expression every moment. His manner was marked by exquisite courtesy and dignity; his gestures were quick and graceful. Calhoun's words rushed from his lips with great rapidity, as if they could not keep up with the swift course of his thinking. Some of his words were clipped off to make room for others. He was intensely in earnest. That voice so sweet and mellow, and ringing out like the music of a deep-toned bell, found its way into the hearts of those who listened. As Calhoun stood thus, with head erect and blazing eyes, he looked every inch a man. He spoke out boldly against England. Her

insults and wrongs towards our seamen must be met by war, he said; the honor and safety of our whole country must be maintained.

"We hail this young Carolinian," said a leading man of that time, "as one of the master spirits who stamp their names upon the age in which they live." Calhoun's speech gave him a place at once as one of the leaders in the halls of Congress. Soon afterwards he wrote out resolutions pledging the country to go to war against England. "The period has arrived," he wrote, "when it is the sacred duty of Congress to call forth the patriotism and resources of the country." Congress adopted these resolutions and the war began. When news of the first

American success over the British came to Washington, we are told that Calhoun, Henry Clay, Lowndes, and Cheves joined hands and danced together a four-hand reel. Calhoun continued to urge



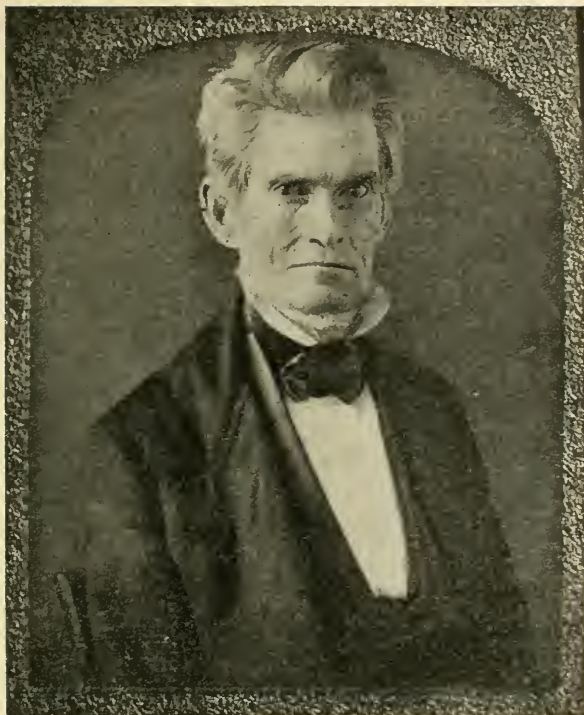
CALHOUN MONUMENT, CHARLESTON

that large numbers of soldiers should be sent into the field. "We have had a peace like a war," he said. "In the name of Heaven let us not have the only thing that is worse — a war like a peace." On one occasion he was called "the youthful Hercules who has all along borne the war on his shoulders."

John C. Calhoun loved the republic that was founded by Washington. He wished to see it grow strong. He spoke in favor of a larger navy as "the most safe, most effectual, and cheapest mode of defence." Before railroads were known, Calhoun said, "Let us make great permanent roads, not like the Romans, with the view of subjecting and ruling provinces, but for the more honorable purposes of defence, and of connecting more closely the interests of different sections of the country."

Calhoun as Secretary of War. — From 1817 to 1825 Calhoun was Secretary of War in President Monroe's Cabinet. Order and system were brought by him into the confusion that had marked the work of this department. The United States Military Academy at West Point was reorganized by Calhoun and started upon the way to success.

Calhoun Vice-President of the United States. — He was chosen vice-president of the United States in 1825 and afterwards elected for a second term. In this office it was his business to preside over the Senate at Washington. Promptness and dignity and



From a daguerreotype

J. C. Calhoun

courtesy always marked him in the discharge of this duty.

Calhoun's Views of States Rights. — During a period of nearly eight years while Calhoun was vice-president, the

Northern members of Congress passed tax laws that rested heavily upon the South. Calhoun aided James Hamilton, Jr., and George McDuffie in urging that the laws should be changed. He wrote out a paper to show that the Southern states were paying more taxes than they ought to pay to keep up the Federal government at Washington. A law called the Force Bill was brought forward in Congress, in which it was proposed to send soldiers to compel the South to pay the tariff and thus to carry more than her part of the public burden.

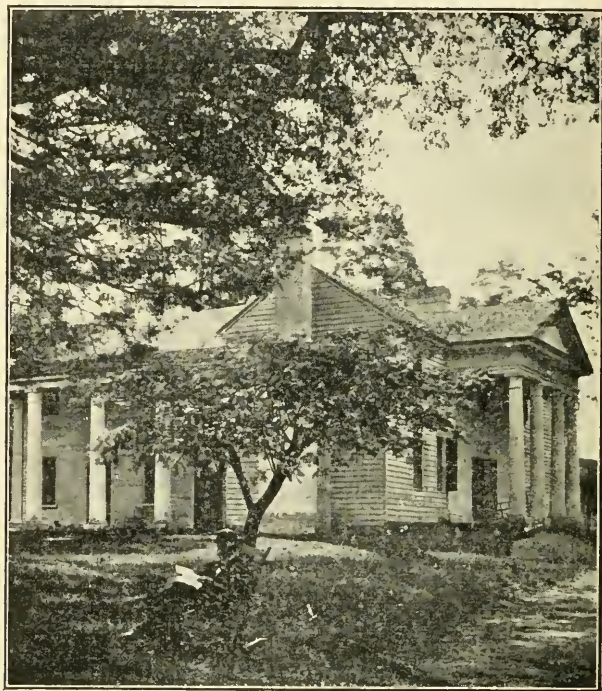
Calhoun in the Senate. — Calhoun at once resigned the vice-presidency and was sent to the Senate of the United States, in which body in February, 1833, he made a great speech on the Force Bill. At that time his hair grew long and fell in dark, heavy masses over his temples. His eyes seemed darker and more full of fire than in the early days. The nervous right hand and arm were half extended while he spoke. With the left foot advanced he stood in front of the senatorial chair on which was flung the cloak that he was in the habit of wearing. The voice was clear and sweet, but it had a deeper tone, for it was filled with the solemn convictions of years. He loved the Federal Union and he wanted to preserve it. But justice for the South he also wished to secure. "How is it proposed to preserve the Union?" he said. "By force! Does any man in his senses believe that this beautiful structure —

this harmonious aggregate of states, produced by the joint consent of all — can be preserved by force? Its very introduction will be certain destruction to this Federal Union. No! No! You cannot keep the states united in their constitutional and federal bonds by force."

Calhoun's Country Home. — Calhoun remained in the Senate from 1833 until his death, in 1850, with the exception of a brief term as Secretary of State in President Tyler's Cabinet (1844--1845). When public duties did not keep him in Washington, Calhoun spent his time at Fort Hill, a simple home which he built upon a beautiful hilltop, where Clemson College is now located. He always had a deep interest in the cultivation of his farm. Agriculture he called the "first pursuit," that is, the most important occupation among men. Many of his letters were written to give directions about plowing and planting and harvesting. While he was making great speeches against Webster and Clay at Washington, he was also thinking about his crops of cotton and corn and about sowing garden and watermelon seed to his home.

When he was at Fort Hill, Calhoun arose at daybreak and walked over the hills that made up his plantation. His keen eyes took in at a glance the condition of the fields and of the crops. At half past seven he again entered his home and sat down to breakfast. Then he worked steadily in his office until three o'clock. The

writing of long letters and discussions of public questions kept him busy. After dinner he read history and books of travel or carried on conversation. When the last



FORT HILL

beams of the sun were upon the hills, Calhoun's tall figure might be seen walking again across the fields. After tea there was reading and talking until ten, and then he retired.

Calhoun as a Man. — Conversation was the art in which John C. Calhoun surpassed all other men of his own time. By nature he was affectionate. Generosity was stamped upon his frank, honest countenance. The kindness of a great heart marked his manner. He loved men, and in particular he loved young men. In return, men loved him. The strong mind, the pure heart, and the sympathetic, loving nature of John C. Calhoun won every man with whom he came into personal touch. He was always the manly, accomplished gentleman. Lovable is the word that describes this great Carolinian. He had no secrets to hide. No vice, no folly, and no weakness ever left a stain upon his nature. His soul was the home of all that makes for purity and truth. We are told that he was often seen, in Washington, sitting upright, on a sofa, snuff-box in hand, talking hour after hour, in even, soft, deliberate tones, about the principles of our government.

Calhoun's Fight for the Rights of the South. — During Calhoun's long term of service in the Senate he was fighting for the Southern people. Many enemies arose, who said that the people of the South were cruel; that they did not show mercy to the negro slaves. "The charge is not true," cried the Carolinian leader, with ringing voice and flashing eye. He called attention to the low, degraded, and savage condition of the black race that came to the South from Africa. Within a few

generations that race had been lifted upward to a vastly better state of body, mind, and morals. Who had thus



ST. PHILIP'S CHURCH, CHARLESTON

“THE WESTMINSTER ABBEY OF SOUTH CAROLINA”

trained the black race for better things? The kindly, generous, and noble white people of the Southern states.

His Last Great Speech. — His Death. — On the 4th of

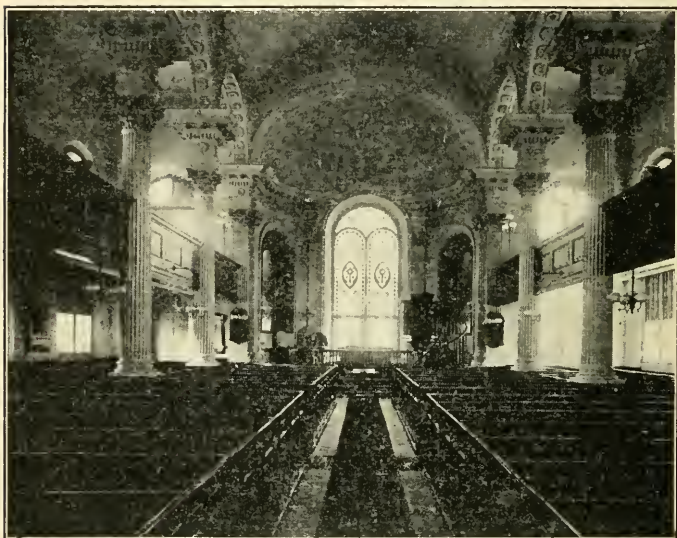
March, 1850, at half past twelve o'clock, John C. Calhoun entered the Senate to make his last effort to save the old Union. He walked to his seat, leaning upon the arm of his friend from South Carolina, Governor James Hamilton. His body was bent under his own weight, but his step was firm. A deep furrow ran across Calhoun's broad forehead. His hair, thick and long and gray and rising nearly straight from the scalp, fell over on all sides and hung down in thick masses like a lion's mane. The eyebrows were very near to the eyes and the cheeks had little flesh upon them. His complexion was dark, as if tanned by the sun. The lips were thin and the mouth was drawn downward at the corners. His features were firm and stern.

The Senate Chamber was crowded. Calhoun arose, spoke a few words, and handed a bundle of papers containing his speech to his friend, Senator Mason, of Virginia. While Mason was reading there was deep silence. Webster and Clay sat like statues. Many of the senators were moved to tears. There was a great hush among the people in the galleries as the last appeal for peace between North and South was heard from the noble Carolina senator.

"How can the Union be preserved?" This was the subject of the great address. There was not a word of anger in it. He pleaded for justice toward the Southern people. They had been greatly wronged, he said. Unless the North should stop its war against the South,

there would be no longer any peace and honor for the South in the Union.

When the address was finished, the members of the Senate crowded around Calhoun to take him by the hand and congratulate him. He walked forward and



ST. PHILIP'S CHURCH, INTERIOR

stood for a few moments near the clerk's desk, and there held an earnest talk with his two great friends, Daniel Webster and Henry Clay. Calhoun was then led out of the Senate, and a few days later he passed away. Clay and Webster both urged the North to listen to the Carolinian's appeal for peace.

Calhoun's friends often spoke of him as a suitable man for the presidency of the United States. Near the close of his life he said: "For many a long year I have aspired to an object far higher than the presidency; that is, doing my duty under all circumstances, in every trial, irrespective of parties and without regard to friendships or enmities, but simply in reference to the prosperity of the country."

Calhoun's Love for South Carolina. — The people of the commonwealth of South Carolina always held the first place in Calhoun's heart. "My dear and honored state," were words that he often used. "South Carolina has never mistrusted nor forsaken me," he said. When the great leader died, the people of Charleston asked that his body might rest among them. St. Philip's churchyard already held in its bosom many of Carolina's honored dead. A tomb was prepared for him there, and on the 26th of April, 1850, a great company of Calhoun's countrymen followed his body to the place of burial. A spreading magnolia tree and a splendid sarcophagus keep continual watch over the resting-place of John Caldwell Calhoun, South Carolina's greatest man.

CHAPTER XL.

PIERCE M. BUTLER AND THE PALMETTO REGIMENT
IN THE MEXICAN WAR.

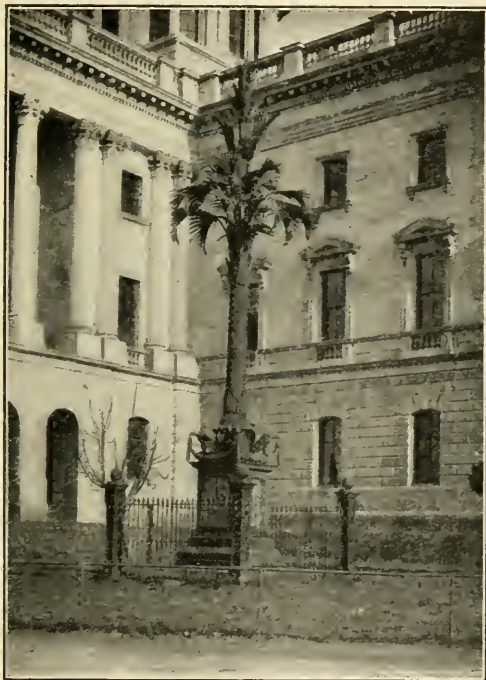
Pierce M. Butler. — Pierce M. Butler was a native of Edgefield County. He was trained to be a soldier and became a lieutenant in the United States army. Butler left the army and carried on business as a banker in Columbia, but when the Seminole Indians became troublesome in Florida he went to help in the fight against them.

From 1838 until 1840 Butler was governor of South Carolina. When the Mexican War began, Butler was made colonel of the Palmetto Regiment raised in his native state. In 1846 these Carolina "boys," about twelve hundred in number, unfurled their beautiful flag, shouldered their muskets, and marched away under Colonel Butler to fight the Mexicans.

Butler's Regiment of South Carolinians in the Mexican War. — In March, 1847, Butler's regiment formed a part of Gen. Winfield Scott's army which captured the Mexican town of Vera Cruz. Then they marched with Scott into the interior of Mexico. Up into the mountains and through narrow passes the soldiers toiled. The sun was hot and the Mexicans fought bravely, but the American troops drove them back.

On the 25th of August, 1847, a battle was fought at

Churubusco. The Mexicans held their ground with great courage. When the fighting had been in progress



MEXICAN MONUMENT, COLUMBIA, IN HONOR OF
THE PALMETTO REGIMENT

more than two hours, it was seen that the Mexican right wing must be broken. Gen. Shields led a body of Americans against the right end of the enemy's line. The Palmetto Regiment formed a part of Shields' line

of battle. This was due to the request made by Colonel Butler, that "South Carolina wants a place in the picture near the flashing of the guns."

As Shields' men advanced over the level field the chief fire of the Mexicans fell upon the Carolina regiment. Round shot from the enemy's cannon, shell, grape, canister, and musket balls came into their faces like hail. Still onward the Carolinians rushed. Butler's horse was shot under him, but as the horse fell the gallant officer leaped to the ground and ran forward on foot. The flag-bearer was shot down, but Lieutenant-Colonel Dickinson seized the Palmetto banner and was waving it aloft, when he received a mortal wound. Adj. James Cantey was shot, Capt. J. D. Blanding was struck down by a bullet, and Lieutenants Abney and Sumter were bleeding from wounds. As Dickinson fell Colonel Butler changed the course of his regiment and led them into the thickest part of the battle. The enemy increased the fury of their fire. A bullet stretched Butler lifeless on the field, but his men rushed on and drove the Mexicans in flight toward the City of Mexico. A large part of the victory at Churubusco was won by Butler and his Carolina riflemen.

At the storming of Chapultepec, Sept. 13, 1847, the Palmetto Regiment formed a part of one of the columns of attack. Straight up the steep hill the Carolinians fought their way step by step. At the top of the hill stood a high wall. Over the wall rushed the Carolina

regiment in company with other brave troops, and the fortress was taken.

Chapultepec stood in the plain near the City of Mexico. When the fortress was captured Scott's army marched forward, only to find that the city was surrounded by a wall high and thick. The openings in the wall were closed by large, heavy gates. A company of riflemen of the regular army and the Palmetto Regiment were placed in front to lead the attack. As the Carolinians rushed towards the Belen gateway, a fearful fire from the Mexican cannon and muskets swept the road over which they must pass. Riflemen stood on the wall above the gate and the blazing of their guns seemed like a solid sheet of fire. The roar of the heavy guns was terrible to hear. The Carolinians paused not. Every moment men were falling, but their comrades rushed through the gateway and the Mexicans fled. The beautiful flag of the Carolina regiment was immediately planted on the wall above the gateway, the first American flag to float over the captured city. When the rest of the army saw that beautiful banner bearing aloft the palmetto and the crescent of South Carolina, they knew that the City of Mexico was taken.

CHAPTER XLI.

J. MARION SIMS, THE GREAT SURGEON.

J. Marion Sims's Boyhood. — James Marion Sims was born Jan. 25, 1813, in Lancaster District, South Carolina, about ten miles south of the town of Lancaster. His father was sheriff and surveyor of the district of Lancaster and became colonel of a regiment during the war against England, in 1812-1815.

When Marion, as he was called, was five years old he went to an old field school near Hanging Rock Creek. During the short term that ran through the summer months he learned to spell words of two syllables. At the age of six he went away from his father's house to live in the home of a school-teacher. The little boy was badly treated by the teacher and by one of his grown daughters. This stern old man made it a rule to whip every boy the first day that he entered his school. Marion's father soon took him home again. His next teacher taught the pupils well in arithmetic and writing, but his temper was hot and he would whip all the boys little and big without any mercy. When Marion was nine years of age he was sent to a teacher who gave more instruction and less whipping. In this school Marion stood at the head of the class in spelling.

Sims's Student Days. — The fifth day of December, 1825, marked a great event in Marion's life. On that

day he entered an academy in the town of Lancaster and began to study Latin. A preacher named Henry Connelly had charge of the school. He was an excellent teacher. One day the mischievous young Sims fixed a pin in a chair, with the sharp point sticking upward. The schoolmaster himself sat down upon the pin, and then he "flew up like a rocket and came down like the stick," says Marion. Long afterwards Mr. Connelly learned that it was Marion Sims who had fixed the pin in the chair and refused to forgive his pupil.

In 1830 J. Marion Sims completed the course of study in the academy. He wished to become a clerk in a store, because his father, he thought, was too poor to give him an education. His father insisted that he should go to college. In October of that year, therefore, young Sims entered the sophomore class in South Carolina College, at Columbia. About six months afterwards he left the college and went home. His father was absent and his mother showed great surprise when she saw her son. He told her that he wished to become a merchant's clerk and help his father to make a living for the family. The next morning the mother made him return to his studies. One of his friends among the students was James Henley Thornwell, who was afterwards famous as a preacher and became president of the college.

"Well, I dragged through college in 1831-1832. I was not remarkable for anything very bad or very good.

I was known as a self-willed but amiable fellow. My recitations were about average." This is the way that Sims wrote about his college days. He did not swear or drink or gamble. In December, 1832, he com-

pleted the course of study at the college and went back to his father's home.



J. MARION SIMS

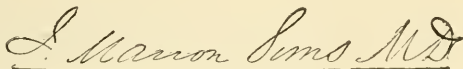
Sims Decides to Be a Physician. — The mother of young Sims, before she died, expressed her wish that he would become a preacher. His father was anxious that he should be a lawyer. The young man of twenty did not

wish to become either a lawyer or a preacher, but told his father that he meant to be a doctor. The father's disappointment was very great. He said that he would be very sorry to see his son "going around from house to house through the country with a box of pills in one hand and a squirt in the other." The father lived long enough, however, to change his opinion, and to set a higher value upon the noble work done by the faithful doctor.

His Early Years as a Physician. — Two years were spent in medical studies in Charleston and Philadelphia.

Then in May, 1835, J. Marion Sims opened an office as doctor in the little town of Lancaster. He had his name painted on a piece of tin two feet long. This sign was hung outside of the office. His library of seven books was locked up

in one of the drawers of his



bureau. He

THE AUTOGRAPH OF DOCTOR SIMS

waited three

weeks for his first patient, and then he was asked to visit a sick child. He tells us that he did not know what was the matter with the child. He gave it several doses of medicine but the poor baby died. His next patient was also a child. That baby died also. Sims was so disappointed that he took down his long tin signboard and threw it into an old well. He then put all of his medicines and books into a small one-horse wagon and went to Mount Meigs, in Montgomery County, Alabama.

Near Mount Meigs a man was lying in bed very sick. He became thin and weak and his pain was almost more than he could bear. Nearly a dozen doctors from far and near went to see him. Not one of them knew what made the man so sick. Not one gave him any help. Marion Sims had a keen eye. The touch of his fingers was exceedingly delicate. When he placed those skillful hands upon the poor suffering frame, he soon found the place where the disease was located. With a sharp

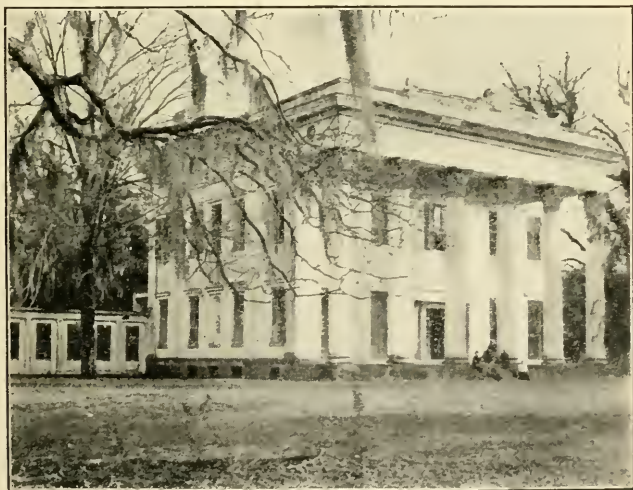
instrument he made an opening in that part of the man's body. The cause of the sickness was removed and within a few days the sufferer became well and strong. That case made Sims a famous man in the neighborhood.

Sims's Career as a Surgeon. — Sims went to live in Montgomery, Alabama. He soon became known there as a wonderful surgeon. Men and women who had sought help from many physicians and were not healed came to Sims and he cured them. The lame and the halt and those who were almost blind he healed. With a sharp knife and other pointed instruments he did it all. He knew the exact point in foot, arm, eye, or body that needed the touch of the knife. He had in his right hand the skill and steadiness needful for every operation. His fame grew so that all those in that part of Alabama that had diseases were brought to him. To nearly all of these he gave relief.

In the year 1845 Doctor Sims gave relief to sufferings still greater than any of those already mentioned. Several women who were afflicted with a malady that had always been considered incurable were restored to health by his wonderful skill. The healing of this malady gave Sims a place among the greatest surgeons and physicians of the world.

A long and wasting sickness came upon Sims himself. His faithful wife Theresa nursed him slowly back to a moderate measure of health. He was never entirely

well again, but he never ceased to work in relieving the pain of other people. He went to New York City and established there the first hospital ever erected for the treatment of women. He went to Europe and was received with warm welcome by all of the greatest surgeons and physicians of the Old World. Sims was received as a guest at the palace of Emperor Napoleon the Third of France. Honors were heaped upon him wherever he went. He deserved them all. He has already taken his place among those who have been God's agents in bestowing blessings upon men and women in every part of the earth.



COUNTRY HOUSE OF JOHN L. MANNING
(GOVERNOR OF SOUTH CAROLINA, 1852-1853)

PART IV.

MEN OF THE CONFEDERATE WAR.

1860 – 1865

CHAPTER XLII.

FRANCIS W. PICKENS, FIRST CONFEDERATE WAR GOVERNOR OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

Francis W. Pickens. — Francis W. Pickens was born in the year 1805, in what is now Oconee County. His father was the second Andrew Pickens and his grandfather was the first Andrew Pickens, the great Revolutionary leader of the upper country. The second Andrew Pickens held the office of colonel in the regular army during the War of 1812 and was afterwards governor of South Carolina. Francis, of the third generation, was a student at South Carolina College and became a lawyer in Edgefield. In 1858 he was sent by President Buchanan as minister from the United States to Russia. Two years later (1860) Pickens was made governor of South Carolina.

Northern Treatment of the South. — We remember that John C. Calhoun in his great speech in the Senate

(1850) asked the Northern people to be fair and just to the South. The people of the South were doing all that they could to help the negroes to be honest and truthful. They were teaching the Africans how to work and how to live. They fed and clothed them well and treated them kindly. Every day the negroes were becoming a better and a wiser people. Most of the people of the North, however, paid no attention to Calhoun's appeal. They treated the South more and more unfairly. They said that



FRANCIS W. PICKENS

the Southern people were very wicked in the way that they treated the negroes. Of course this charge was not true, but many people in the North kept on saying that it was true. The South and the North became very angry against each other. In November, 1860, the Northern States elected as president Abraham Lincoln, a man who had talked against the South in a very unjust manner.

Lincoln's Election Regarded as Unfriendly. — Lincoln was elected by that party in the North that was most unfriendly and unfair to the South. The people of the

South saw that as president he would make matters worse instead of better. The South wanted peace. Her people had grown weary of the harsh and unjust talk and unjust laws of the people of the North. The shortest and easiest way to gain peace, they said, was



FIRST BAPTIST CHURCH, COLUMBIA

to go out of the Union. They had been living in that Union in company with the Northern states since 1789, that is, only about seventy years. The Federal Constitution as they understood did not deny it to them the right to withdraw.

The South Carolina Secession Convention. — South Carolina was the first state to act. A convention of her

people met in the Baptist Church in Columbia on the 17th of December, 1860. This convention was "the gravest, ablest, and most dignified body of men I ever saw brought together," afterwards wrote an eye-witness, Professor Joseph Le Conte. The next day the members of the convention went to Charleston, and on the 20th of December, at twelve o'clock, noon, they assembled in St. Andrew's Hall. The streets of Charleston were crowded with people, flags were flying from every house, and every man was wearing a blue badge in his hat. Gen. D. F. Jamison, of Barnwell District, was president of the convention. At half past one o'clock Chancellor Inglis, of Chesterfield, stood up and read to the convention an ordinance which had been written by Chancellor F. H. Wardlaw. The vote was taken at once and every member of the convention, one hundred and nine in number, voted for the ordinance. Not a man voted against it. At seven o'clock in the evening all the members signed their names to it. This ordinance said



FRANCIS HUGH WARDLAW

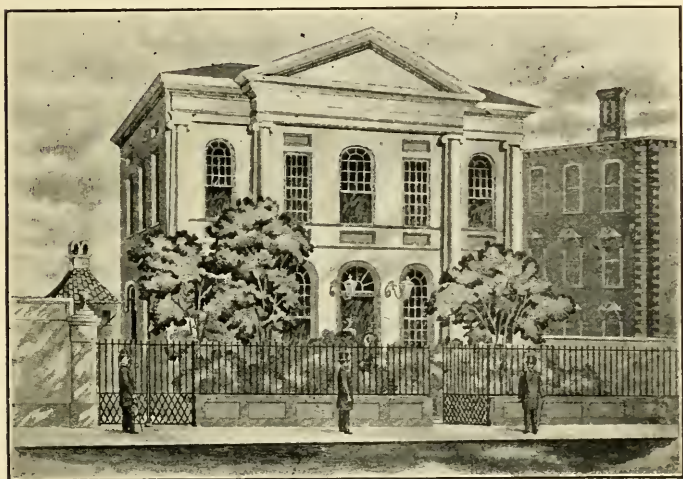
that the people of the state of South Carolina repealed the former ordinance which the people of the same state adopted on the 23d of May, 1788. Church bells rang and cannon boomed and the people shouted. The union between South Carolina and the other states was done away with, and the people of the commonwealth thought that they would now have peace.

Southern Confederacy. — By the 1st of February, 1861, the seven Southern states which had then gone out of the old Union formed a new union, called the Confederate States of America. These states were South Carolina, Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas. The first capital of the Confederacy was Montgomery, Alabama. Its first president was Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi.

Fort Sumter Taken. — Governor Pickens asked the Federal Government at Washington to give up Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor, because the soil on which Sumter stood was a part of the state of South Carolina. President Davis made the same request, and promises were made that the fort would be handed over to the Confederates. Suddenly it became known that these promises would not be kept, and that war ships with soldiers and cannon and supplies of food were on the way to strengthen and hold Sumter.

General Beauregard was in command of the Confederate forces at Charleston. He sent a note to Fort Sumter, asking the soldiers there to move out and leave

the place to him. They refused to go. The Confederates wanted the Federal garrison to give up the fort peaceably. The commander of Sumter, Major Anderson, wished to go away, and when he heard a few days

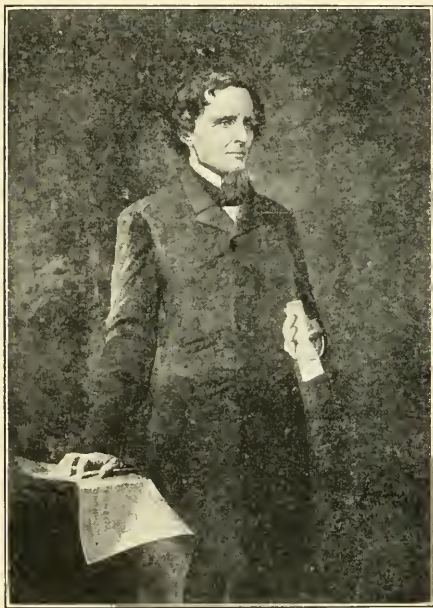


HALL OF THE ST. ANDREW'S SOCIETY, CHARLESTON
ERECTED, 1814 — BURNT, 1861

before that ships were coming, he said: "My heart is not in the war which I see is to be thus commenced."

It was twenty minutes past three o'clock on the morning of April 12, 1861. Four Confederate officers were standing at the edge of the water at Fort Sumter looking out to sea. Just outside of the mouth of the harbor were the lights of two armed vessels. They were coming to make war against the Confederacy. President Lincoln

had sent the vessels to open the war and there they were at the mouth of the harbor. The Confederate officers handed a note to the commander of the fort, saying that within one hour the Confederate cannon would open fire. Then the officers entered a boat and



JEFFERSON DAVIS

rowed away. At half past four o'clock a shell was fired from Fort Johnson, on James Island. It made a path of light through the darkness as it sped towards Sumter. The sound of the gun rolled across the water to the great crowd of people who were looking on from the wharf and from the houses in Charles-

ton. They saw the shell burst over Sumter, and then they heard a great roar of artillery as all the Confederate batteries began to fire. At seven in the morning another war vessel appeared outside. At the same

time the guns of Sumter began their reply to the Confederates.

For thirty-four hours the battle was kept up. Many of the cannon in Sumter were knocked from their places by the ten-inch shells of the Confederate guns, and the woodwork of the fort was set on fire. The garrison surrendered and sailed back north in the vessels whose coming had begun a great war.

Lincoln Begins the War. — President Lincoln commenced the war against the South by sending an armed force in war vessels to Charleston Harbor, in April, 1861. When that expedition returned to New York, Lincoln called out a great army to march by land into the Southern states. Then four other states went out of the Union and joined the Southern Confederacy. These were Virginia, North Carolina, Arkansas, and Tennessee. Richmond, in Virginia, became the capital of the Confederacy. The North kept up the war against the South by sending armies to invade the Southern states. For four years the South kept back the invading forces. Sixty-one thousand men went from South Carolina to do their part of the fighting. In addition to these, ten thousand old men and boys stood ready with arms to defend their homes.

CHAPTER XLIII.

MILLEDGE L. BONHAM, SECOND CONFEDERATE WAR
GOVERNOR OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

Milledge L. Bonham. — Milledge L. Bonham was born in Edgefield District (1815). He was graduated from South Carolina College in his twenty-fifth year and became a lawyer. In 1836 he went to Florida as a soldier to fight against the Seminole Indians. Ten years later he served in the United States army in Mexico, as colonel in command of a regiment. From 1856 until 1860 he sat in Congress at Washington as a representative from his native state.

Bonham as a Soldier. — At the battle of Manassas, in 1861, Bonham was in command of a South Carolina brigade, which was afterwards led by J. B. Kershaw. Two of Bonham's regiments took part in the fight at Stone Bridge near Manassas. When the Federal army was driven in rout from that field Bonham's brigade rushed after it in pursuit.

Bonham as Governor. — After the battle of Manassas (1861) Bonham was elected a member of the Confederate Congress at Richmond. In 1862-1864 he was governor of South Carolina. During this time Bonham showed great energy in sending men from South Carolina to fight in Virginia and in the Mississippi Valley. At the same time he had a great battle in progress under his

own eye at Charleston. There the Federal army and navy were using all their strength to capture the city by the sea.

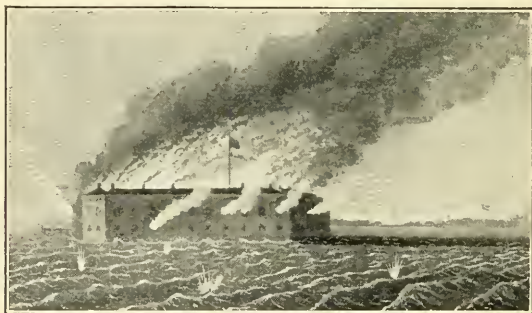
Attempt of Federals to Regain Fort Sumter. — Fort Sumter was taken by Beauregard in April, 1861. In April, 1863, a fleet of nine Federal war vessels entered the mouth of the harbor to take Fort Sumter from the Confederates. Their vessels were the strongest ships then upon the sea, and some of their guns threw fifteen-inch shells, each of which weighed four hundred and forty pounds.



MILLEDGE L. BONHAM

The sun came up in a clear sky on the morning of April 7, 1863. The air was soft and balmy. At noon-day the tide was rolling in strong, and at fifteen minutes past twelve o'clock the Federal ironclads raised their anchors and started towards the fort. The drum-beat was sounded at Fort Sumter, and the five hundred and fifty officers and men of the First Regiment of South

Carolina Artillery, in gray and red, were formed and went to their posts. The flag of the Confederacy floated above them. In addition to this they ran up the blue banner of Carolina, with white crescent and palmetto, and also the colors of the First Regiment. As these flags fluttered out thirteen guns boomed forth a salute, and the regiment's band began a lively air on the ramparts. Col. Alfred Rhett, commander of the fort, stood on top of the parapet at the point nearest the ships and watched them as they came on. Some of his officers stood with him. Major Blanding and his men



FORT SUMTER UNDER FIRE

were ready with the lower row of guns and Lieutenant-Colonel Yates was in charge of the upper row.

The April afternoon was bright with sunshine. The air was still. The waters of the harbor seemed as smooth as glass. A great crowd of people was gathered on the battery and in the doors and windows of the houses in

Charleston. Everybody held his breath as the big vessels moved forward. Then men said, "Look!" A puff of white smoke rolled up from Fort Moultrie, on Sullivan's Island, and the booming of a heavy gun came rolling across the water as the first Confederate shell rushed out to meet the hostile ships. The latter opened fire on Sumter and an entire battery sent back reply from that fort. Confederate guns on Morris Island and Sullivan's Island joined in the battle. The smoke floated up until the sunlight changed it into snowy clouds. The earth and the sea trembled with the thunder of a hundred cannon. The air around Fort Sumter seemed to be full of bolts of fire.

And how did the battle go with Fort Sumter? The Confederates held bravely to their work. As they stood on the walls of the fort they could actually see the great black iron balls, fifteen inches in diameter, as they rushed from the mouths of the guns on the ships towards the fort. The thick walls fell where those balls struck. But the Confederate gunners fired with deadly aim. The *Keokuk* was riddled with heavy shot and four other Federal vessels were badly injured. At sunset the entire fleet gave up the fight and crept out of the harbor. Early the next morning the *Keokuk* went to the bottom.

Confederate Defences of Charleston. — The Confederates built two forts on the upper end of Morris Island. These forts were called Battery Gregg and Battery Wagner. Federal infantry came ashore upon the lower

end of this island and set up batteries. Then the ships opened their fire and the land batteries fired, and six thousand Federal soldiers advanced against Battery Wagner. The Confederates drove them back and held their position. Heavy cannon were then set up at the southern end of Morris Island and their great shells were thrown into Fort Sumter. The Confederate gunners on the walls of Sumter would see a cloud of white smoke among the low hills of the island. A heavy black shell would arise from the cloud and speed toward the fort. With a fierce hissing the shell rushed through the air and struck the brick wall of the fort. Sixteen days and nights without ceasing this firing was kept up. The walls of the fort were broken down. Then the war ships came up again to capture Sumter. The Confederates stood bravely on the ruins of the fort and kept back the enemy.

Other Attempts to Retake Sumter — 1863. — One hour after midnight, in the early morning of Sept. 9, 1863, Maj. Stephen Elliott, second commander of Sumter, stood upon the broken wall of the fort. Some of his men were at work bringing sand in bags from Charleston to make the fort stronger. Two days before, the commander of the Federal fleet had demanded the surrender of Sumter. But the gallant Elliott asked the messenger to tell the Admiral that "he may have Fort Sumter when he can take it and hold it." Elliott saw now the soldiers who were coming to take it. Two lines

of boats filled with armed men were drawing near through the darkness. The Confederates held their fire. When the boats touched the landing place, Elliott's riflemen poured in their shot; they flung fireballs and torpedoes and pieces of brick upon the foe. The heavy guns from the other forts sent a hail of grapeshot among the boats. The enemy was routed and many prisoners were taken.

Then the Federal cannon began to throw their shells into the fort, larger shells and more of them, and for a longer time. Forty-one days and nights the roar of the guns continued. The Confederates carried sand and laughed while they worked and fired their guns. The fort was theirs and they meant to hold it. One morning in November, 1863, a shot from the enemy cut the fort's flagstaff. James Tupper, a lad from Charleston, walked along the top of the wall for a long distance, picked up the flag, and began to tie it fast to another staff. The enemy turned all their guns upon him and shells began to burst in the air around him. Three



STEPHEN ELLIOTT

of his comrades ran to help Tupper. The cannon balls struck the sand near their feet and threw clouds of it over the four soldiers. When they were lifting the banner, a great shot struck it and knocked it from their hands. Up it went again and the staff was planted firmly in the sand. Fifteen long minutes they remained in that place of awful danger. Then two of them stood upon a pile of sandbags and waved their caps defiantly at the enemy. Many and many a time again the flag was put back in its place in the same manner after the staff had been broken by cannon-balls.

Another Attempt on Sumter in 1864. — Let us look again at Fort Sumter in July, 1864. The enemy's shells had beaten down its walls until they were only a few feet above the water. Capt. John C. Mitchell, third commander of the fort, had the heart of a lion. By night he brought sandbags and palmetto logs from Charleston. His men dug holes in the sand and piled up the bags and the logs to make their shelter safer. The Federal ships and land batteries began once more and finally to send their iron balls upon the garrison. Could they take Sumter? Not so long as those brave Confederates had strength to aim their guns! A cruel shell killed the gallant Mitchell, but Capt. Thomas A. Huguenin stepped into his place as commander. Throughout August and into September, 1864, sixty days in all, the great three-hundred-pound shells hissed and roared and burst about the fort. The Confederates sent back their

shells with aim so true that fifty-one of the enemy's best cannon were knocked into fragments.

Fort Sumter was never captured from the Confederates; the city of Charleston was never taken from them by assault. Gen. R. S. Ripley was always ready with his small army to drive back the land forces of the enemy. Governor Bonham cheered on his countrymen while they fought and died. Then Sherman's large army came up the coast from Georgia, and the gallant Confederates withdrew from Sumter and from Charleston to help their countrymen in the last battles against the invaders in North Carolina.

CHAPTER XLIV.

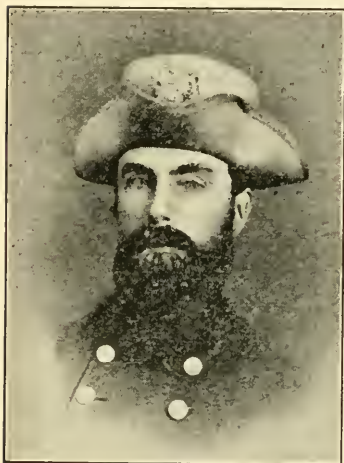
MAXCY GREGG'S BRIGADE.

James Gregg. — The Greggs came from Scotland to the Pee Dee country and built homes in the present Marion County about 1752. James Gregg was born there in 1787. He completed the course of study at South Carolina College in 1808. Five years later he married Cornelia Maxey, daughter of Jonathan Maxey, first president of the college.

During a long period James Gregg was the foremost lawyer in the town of Columbia. He was more than six feet tall and as straight as an arrow. So wise and so strong and so honest was the elder Gregg that his

people sent him for twenty-four years, term after term, to sit as their lawmaker in the legislature.

Maxcy Gregg. — The eldest son of James Gregg was given his mother's name and called Maxcy Gregg. At the age of eighteen he completed his education at



MAXCY GREGG

South Carolina College, standing first among his classmates. The son entered into partnership with his father as a lawyer. In the midst of work, he did not forget his Latin and Greek books, but often read them. He loved to study flowers and birds, and he built a small observatory on the top of his house to enable him to watch the move-

ments of the stars. In 1846 Maxcy Gregg laid aside his law books, and was appointed major in a regiment of soldiers which expected to take part in the Mexican War. The war was over, however, before they were able to reach the field. He took up again his work in the courts of law, and in 1860 was elected a member of the convention that passed the ordinance of secession. The convention ordered the enlistment

of the First Regiment of South Carolina Volunteers, and appointed Maxcy Gregg as commander. With this regiment he was in service at Charleston until after the capture of Fort Sumter.

Gregg's Brigade. — In 1862 Gregg was made commander of a brigade of five regiments. These were the First, Twelfth, Thirteenth, and Fourteenth regiments and Orr's rifle regiment of South Carolina Volunteers. This brigade became a part of the Confederate army, under Gen. R. E. Lee, at Richmond, in Virginia. When General McClellan led a Federal army against Richmond in June, 1862, General Lee began to fight him. Then McClellan started to get away from the Confederates, but the latter followed close after him. Gregg's Carolinians marched in front in this rapid pursuit of the Federal soldiers. The latter halted on a high ridge near Gaines's Mill and prepared to fight. They arranged their cannon on top of the ridge, while their riflemen stood in several lines to hold the position.

At Gaines's Mill. — Lee ordered his Confederates to advance and take the hill from the Federal army. Gregg's men led the way across the creek at the foot of the slope and started up the hill. They were drawn out in a long line, with flags waving above them and their musket barrels gleaming in the bright sunlight. Solid shot from the cannon on the ridge tore through their ranks. Grapeshot from the same wide-mouthed guns was poured upon them like hail. Musket balls

seemed to fill the air, and the ears of the soldiers were deafened by the crashing and roaring of the little guns and the big guns. The men of Carolina marched straight on in the face of death. Other Confederate brigades advanced on their right and on their left and behind them. They paused long enough to pour their rifle fire into the faces of the enemy and then advanced with a rush and a loud yell.



CONFEDERATE MONUMENT,
CHESTER

General Gregg was on horseback. He rode forward among his soldiers. Men were falling all around him, but Gregg was cool and watchful. When the roar of the guns deepened and the hail of bullets thickened, Gregg drew his sword and called to his men to stand firm. His voice was heard above the awful noise of the battle. The soldiers saw the horse standing upon his hind

feet with his fore legs beating the air and his nostrils spread wide in terror. Gregg sat upon the horse as fixed as a statue, his firm figure erect, the reins in his left hand and the bright sword outstretched in his

right hand. When the soldiers saw and heard their great leader among them in that place of death, and when they looked upon the light in his face, they dashed forward with new courage and seized the top of the hill. The rest of the Confederates advanced at other points, and McClellan was driven from the ridge and through the swamps to the lower part of the James River.

With Jackson. — In August, 1862, Gregg's brigade joined that part of the Confederate army known as Stonewall Jackson's "foot cavalry," because they marched so far on foot. They went to the upper Rappahannock River, in Virginia, to fight General Pope's Federal army. It was decided to make a great circuit and get behind Pope. The Confederates threw away everything except their rifles, powder, and ball. With long, swinging steps they went around through the country, laughing and joking and singing songs. The sun was hot, and the way was dusty, and the soldiers had nothing to eat but dry biscuits, green apples, and green corn, which they found in the fields. Their clothes were in rags, and many of them had no shoes. On and on they went. In two days they marched more than fifty miles. Pope's supplies of food and ammunition and clothing for his army were piled in great warehouses at Manassas. These were seized by the Confederates. For one whole day the hungry Southern soldiers had more than they could eat and wear. They tried on new

shoes, picked out good clothing, ate flour cakes and canned vegetables, drank good coffee, and smoked cigars until darkness came. Everything that was left was burned, and Pope's hungry men came up to have a fight. The Confederate army was then arranged in line ready for the second battle on the field of Manassas.

The Second Battle of Manassas. — Gregg's brigade of Carolinians held the left end of this Confederate line of battle. The five regiments were placed there on a small hill covered with rocks and trees. A large part of the Federal army was thrown against Gregg's brigade, for Pope wished to capture that end of the Confederate line. In six great attacks, one after another, the Federal columns rushed toward that piece of woodland. The fighting went on from early morning till darkness came. The Carolinians fought like heroes. Twice they rushed forward with a yell and drove the enemy in flight before them. In the afternoon the enemy came in larger numbers. They fairly swarmed in the woods and closed in upon Gregg's men from the front and from left and right. The firing made one continuous crash and roar. It was a very storm of death, but the Carolinians never failed. They were like tigers at bay. Some stood up and loaded and fired their muskets. Some knelt down to take careful aim. Some lay on the ground and fired. The two lines came so close together that the Confederates used their bayonets, and some of

them drove back the enemy with rocks. The officers were helping in the fight with swords and pistols.

Gregg moved about everywhere on foot in that awful place. He was always calm. His great courage gave new heart to every soldier that looked upon him. He saw his line growing thinner under the enemy's fire. One third of his brigade lay around him, wounded or dead, and his men had fired away nearly all of their cartridges. When a messenger came from another part of the battle to ask if Gregg could hold the hill, he said that he could hold it. "Tell General Hill," said Gregg to the messenger, "that my ammunition is exhausted, but that I will hold my position with the bayonet."

The place was held.

A little later, the Federal army of Pope was defeated and driven across the Potomac, out of Virginia. No soldiers did more to win the glorious victory of Second Manassas than the brave Carolinians who followed Maxcy Gregg.

Gregg's Death. — At Harper's Ferry and at Sharpsburg in September, 1862, Gregg and his men were among the foremost in the fighting. At Fredericksburg, in Virginia, on the 13th of December, 1862, Gregg's brigade formed the second part of Stonewall Jackson's line of battle; that is, they were in reserve. A large body of Federal troops broke through the first line and went rushing back through the woods towards the second line. Gregg thought that they were Confederates. He there-

fore spurred his horse in front of his own men, and urged them not to fire upon their friends. The Federal soldiers opened fire, and the gallant Gregg fell from his horse with a mortal wound. Col. D. H. Hamilton,



ROBERT E. LEE

of the First Regiment, brought the whole brigade at once into action, and they drove the Federal forces in rout from the field. Two days later the heart of every man in the brigade was stricken with grief, for their brave leader died.

Gen. Robert E. Lee wrote to Governor Pickens concerning General Gregg, that "he has always been at the post of duty and of danger, and his services in this army have been of inestimable value, and his loss

is deeply lamented. In its greatest triumphs and its bloodiest battles he has borne a distinguished part." Lee said further, "The death of such a man is a costly sacrifice, for it is to men of his high integrity and commanding intellect that the country must look to give character to her councils, that she may be respected and honored by all nations."

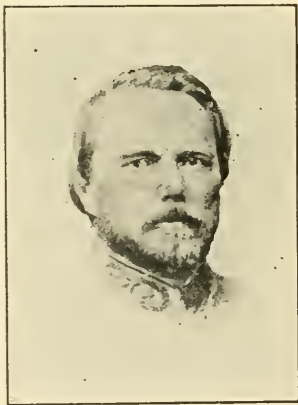
CHAPTER XLV.

SAMUEL MCGOWAN'S BRIGADE.

Samuel McGowan. — Samuel McGowan was a native of Laurens County, where he was born in 1820. At the age of twenty-one he was graduated from South Carolina College. He became a lawyer at Abbeville and was very successful. In 1846 he went to Mexico with the Palmetto Regiment and was made captain. Afterwards he continued his work as lawyer at Abbeville until the trumpet of war sounded. Then he hurried away to Charleston to aid in the capture of Fort Sumter. He went thence to Virginia and took part in the first battle of Manassas.

McGowan Becomes Commander of Gregg's Brigade.

—In 1862 McGowan became colonel of the Fourteenth Regiment of Gregg's brigade. After the death of General



SAMUEL MCGOWAN

Gregg, McGowan was made commander in his place and from that time onward this body of men was known as McGowan's brigade. General McGowan spent the winter of 1862 with his men near the battlefield of

Fredericksburg. They built log huts and plastered them with mud and called their village by the name of Camp Gregg. In May, 1863, they seized their muskets and marched into the thickets to take part in the battle of Chancellorsville.

McGowan's Brigade at Chancellorsville. — After Stonewall Jackson was wounded in the woods at Chancellorsville, McGowan's brigade was led forward with the other brigades of A. P. Hill's division, to form the front part of the Confederate line of battle. They lay down under the pine-trees and slept until morning. In the early light of the morning they saw just before them the log breastworks piled up by the Federal troops. Cannon and muskets began to be fired behind the logs. The Confederates replied to this fire and the battle was soon raging. A great cloud of smoke from the guns settled down upon the forest and the flashing of muskets was like fire in the darkness. McGowan stood near the flag of the First Regiment and cheered on his men. Then he mounted a log and stood in full view urging his troops to advance. A musket ball struck him, and as he fell Colonel Edwards, of the Thirteenth Regiment, rushed forward and led the brigade towards the log breastworks. As the brigade advanced Colonel Edwards was shot. Then Col. Abner Perrin, of the Fourteenth Regiment, led the brigade forward. At the same time the whole Confederate army rushed against the Federal position and drove the Federal soldiers out of the wilderness.

McGowan's Brigade at Gettysburg. — At the beginning of the first day's battle at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania (July 1, 1863), a strong Federal force held the top of a long slope. A Confederate line advanced part of the way up the slope and fought with muskets. The battle went on and many men fell on both sides, but still the Federal



CONFEDERATE MONUMENT AND COURTHOUSE, ORANGEBURG

troops held the top of the slope. McGowan's brigade was sent forward. When the men started up the hill they found the ground covered with dead and wounded Confederates. They moved on and the other Confederates gave a cheer for South Carolina. The enemy began to pour grapeshot into them, but the line of the Carolinians went up that hill in regular order, as if on parade. When balls and shot and shell were raining upon them in a torrent, Col. Abner Perrin, the brigade's

commander, spurred his horse through his own line, passed to the front, waved his sword and called his men to follow. A great shout went up from every throat when the men saw their daring leader in front of them. One rapid rush, with men falling at every step, and they gained the top of the slope, seized the enemy's cannon, and scattered the opposing force. The flag of the First Regiment was the first Confederate banner raised in the town of Gettysburg.

McGowan's Brigade in Northern Virginia. — Early in May, 1864, Lee wished to strike the first blow at Grant in the Wilderness of northern Virginia. General McGowan's wound had healed, and he led his brigade forward with the rest of the Confederates. The Carolinians took position for a moment upon a ridge. The cannon were already roaring some distance away. Orr's regiment of riflemen knelt down and uncovered their heads and offered prayer to the God of battles. The sharp crack of rifles came nearer and nearer, but the voice of the chaplain, Francis P. Mullally, was heard above the sound of fighting. Then the entire brigade advanced to the attack. Nobly they did their part in that fierce struggle which ended with the repulse of Grant.

A few days later Lee and Grant fought a great battle at Spottsylvania. Grant captured a part of Lee's breastwork. McGowan's brigade with a Mississippi brigade was sent to drive Grant's men away. The logs were piled up high and there was a trench dug on each

side of the works. The Carolinians stood on one side of the pile of logs and the Federal troops on the other side. Some men thrust their muskets between the logs and fired. Some climbed to the top and shot down from above. Others put the muzzles of their rifles over the top log and blazed away. The terrible struggle went on for twenty hours. The rain was falling nearly all the time and the trenches were filled with water. The men stood and lay in this water, which soon became red



CHARLESTON IN 1860

with blood. Bushes and even trees were cut down by the rifle bullets. This awful place was known as the Bloody Angle. Carolinians and Mississippians were the heroes of the famous fight. General McGowan received a wound and was taken from the field. Col. J. N. Brown, of the Fourteenth Regiment, commanded

the brigade throughout the battle until Grant was forced to march away from the field.

The next leader of the brigade was Gen. James Conner, a lawyer from Charleston, who had entered the Confederate war as a captain in the Hampton Legion. Then General McGowan came again as commander and continued with the brigade until the surrender of Lee, at Appomattox. After the war, General McGowan became a judge. He died in the year 1895.

CHAPTER XLVI.

JOSEPH B. KERSHAW'S BRIGADE.

Joseph B. Kershaw. — Joseph B. Kershaw was born at Camden, South Carolina, Jan. 5, 1822. As a boy he went to Charleston and became a clerk in a store. Then he returned to Camden and read law books, and at the age of twenty-one became a lawyer. Kershaw served in the Mexican War as a lieutenant. In 1860 he was elected a member of the Secession Convention, and then buckled on his sword as colonel of the Second South Carolina Regiment. This body of troops as a part of Gen. M. L. Bonham's brigade fought bravely in the first battle at Manassas, in Virginia. In 1862 Bonham was elected to the Confederate Congress, and Kershaw became leader of the brigade which contained the Second, Third, Seventh, and Eighth regiments.

Kershaw's Brigade around Richmond. — In June, 1862, Kershaw's men entered the swamps and thickets near Richmond, with the rest of Lee's army, and helped to fight McClellan. They rushed forward to the very mouth of the enemy's cannon and used their bayonets in driving him from the field.

With Jackson. — When Stonewall Jackson advanced to capture Harper's Ferry (September, 1862), Kershaw's brigade was ordered to capture Maryland Heights, near that place. The



"STONEWALL" JACKSON.

men had to climb a steep mountain and when they reached the top they found the narrow pathway filled with great stones, trunks of trees, and tangled brushwood. As they advanced over these, the enemy kept up a continual fire in their faces. The Carolinians did not pause. Sergeant Strother, more than six feet in height, carried the flag of the Eighth Regiment; when he fell, Captain Harllee seized the colors and waved them over his head. A ball stretched him on the field, but Colonel Henegan picked up the flag and called to his men to follow. As he went down with a dangerous wound the men halted. The colonel's voice rang out clear, "Charge and take the works!" The soldiers advanced with bayonets fixed and planted

their flags on the Heights. Harper's Ferry was captured soon afterwards.

At Sharpsburg. — Kershaw's brigade was marching most of the night before the battle of Sharpsburg, in Maryland. The men went into the fight early in the morning tired and hungry.



JOSEPH B. KERSHAW

And yet many of Kershaw's troops entered the battle on a run. The left end of General Lee's line needed help. A strong body of Federal troops was advancing against that part of the Confederate army. Kershaw's men, with other brigades, met them. There was an awful crash from the muskets of the Confederates and the Federal troops turned back. That part of the field was won.

Then Gregg's Carolinians came to help the right end of Lee's line and won the victory there.

At Fredericksburg. — At Fredericksburg Kershaw's brigade was increased by the addition of the Fifteenth Regiment and the Third Battalion of South Carolina. Some of Kershaw's men were placed on top of Marye's Hill. The rest of his soldiers with the Georgians and

North Carolinians were at the foot of the hill, behind a stone wall. Thousands of Federal troops, line after line, advanced to capture that hill, but not one of them ever reached it. The fire from the top of the slope was well aimed. The men behind the wall did most of the work of defence. One line of men stood up and fired as fast as they could take aim and pull the trigger. The rest loaded muskets and handed them to their comrades at the wall. One of Kershaw's men named Kirkland climbed over this wall and at the risk of his life carried water to some of the enemy's wounded soldiers.

At Gettysburg. — Kershaw's brigade reached the famous field of Gettysburg at the beginning of the battle on the second day. The brigade was in the division of McLaws and in the corps of Longstreet. Kershaw drew up his men in line in front of a hill called Little Round Top. Cannon balls were making gaps in the line, but the soldiers moved forward with bristling bayonets. General Kershaw walked with his men, quiet and brave; his eye was flashing and his clear voice gave new courage to all. He was a man of deep piety and always prayed while he fought. More of the enemy's cannon were turned against his men and the grapeshot came like hail. Every moment men were falling on the field, but the Confederates held their fire and advanced. The Federal muskets opened fire and then the Confederate riflemen began their work. The whole Confederate line swept forward across the open field and through the woods



CONFEDERATE MONUMENT, MARION

and drove the enemy to the top of the ridge beyond. A large part of the glory of that second day at Gettysburg belongs to the Carolinians of Kershaw's brigade.

At Chickamauga. — On the 20th of September, 1863, Kershaw's brigade marched out at sunrise to take part in the great battle of Chickamauga, in Georgia. A second brigade was placed under Kershaw's command and with the two he swept forward, driving the enemy through the woods. An open field, eight hundred yards wide, lay between Kershaw and the main Federal line. The men fixed bayonets and rushed across the field at

double quick. They captured nine of the Federal cannon and forced the enemy to give up the top of the ridge. Still another hill beyond was held by Federal troops. Onward, therefore, dashed the troops of Kershaw. The struggle for the hill was long and bloody. Help came to Kershaw and the enemy was driven back. During the night that followed the whole Federal army fled from the field.

At Spottsylvania.—Early on the morning of the 6th of May, 1864, Kershaw's brigade with the rest of Longstreet's corps started into the Wilderness of northern Virginia. Through the fields and woods they moved at a lively pace to bring aid to the rest of Lee's army. A large body of Federal troops was advancing with fixed bayonets. The Confederate army was in danger. The brigade was led by Col. J. D. Kennedy. Kershaw himself commanded other brigades in addition to that which bore his name. Kershaw quickly arrayed all of his troops in line across the roadway in the forest. His eyes were flashing as he spurred his horse in front of his Carolinians. "Now, my old brigade, I expect you to do your duty," he shouted. The Carolinians did not falter, though many of their comrades were slain. The enemy was coming rapidly toward them along the road, but Kershaw's men opened fire at close range, held their ground and checked the course of Grant's men. Then Longstreet and Micah Jenkins led a large force by another way and struck Grant in the

flank. The Federal army was driven from the field, but Jenkins, the brave Carolinian, was left among the dead.

Defending South Carolina against Sherman. — Kershaw's brigade fought in the valley of Virginia against Sheridan and at Petersburg against Grant. Led by General Kennedy the brigade returned to South Carolina in January, 1865, to fight Sherman. When the latter entered the southern part of the state, Kershaw's men, Hampton's men, and other Carolinians, were there to meet him. Slowly they withdrew, fighting all the time, as Sherman's army advanced. In May, 1865, Kershaw's brigade as a part of J. E. Johnston's army stacked arms and the men went home again.

CHAPTER XLVII.

MICAH JENKINS' BRIGADE.

Micah Jenkins, Commander of a South Carolina Brigade. — Micah Jenkins as colonel of the Fifth South Carolina Regiment fought in the battle of Manassas, in July, 1861. In the following year, 1862, Jenkins led the regiment known as the Palmetto Sharpshooters in the battle of Williamsburg, near Richmond. One half of the Confederate forces engaged at Williamsburg were directed by the gallant South Carolinian, Gen. R. H. Anderson. A South Carolina brigade, made up of the First Regiment, Second Rifles, Fifth and Sixth Regi-

ments, Fourth Battalion, and Palmetto Sharpshooters, was placed under the command of Jenkins, in 1862. Before the battle at Williamsburg this brigade was led by R. H. Anderson, but the latter was now made commander of a larger body of troops, most of them from other states.

Around Richmond.

—On the 31st of May, 1862, Jenkins led his brigade into the great battle of Seven Pines, in front of Richmond. The Carolinians under Jenkins formed the left end of the Confederate line which



MICAHA JENKINS

advanced into the thicket against the Federal forces. They charged with bayonets and drove the enemy out of his first camp. Forward again they went, over logs and breastworks directly through the Federal line of battle. The rush was kept up and Jenkins' men captured a second camp. The enemy halted in a swamp and fought desperately. The Carolinians paid no atten-

tion to the bullets. On they dashed and the enemy fled.

The spirit of the Carolinians in this fierce battle in the woods was shown in the words of Captain Carpenter



SEVEN PINES BATTLEFIELD TO-DAY

to his men when he fell at the head of his company, "Boys, I am killed, but you press on."

With Lee. — In the battle of Second Manassas, in 1862, General Jenkins and his brigade played their part bravely and well, and helped to win for Lee his great victory. They followed Lee in other campaigns and at last entered the battle of the Wilderness. On the morning of the 6th of May, 1864, Jenkins' men, with some of the other brigades under General Longstreet, struck one end of Grant's line and defeated it. As they were

driving the Federal army before them through the dense woods, Longstreet was seriously injured and Jenkins was slain. In the hour of victory death came to the gallant soldier.

Bratton Takes Command of Jenkins' Brigade. — Gen. John Bratton, known among his men as "Old Reliable," took command of the brigade after the death of General Jenkins. On the 12th of May, 1864, Bratton's men were in line of battle in the woods at Spottsylvania Court House. The enemy advanced against them in two heavy lines, one just behind the other. Bratton made his soldiers hold their fire until the foe was within a distance of fifty yards. Then at the signal, a storm of minie balls was sent into their ranks. Down fell the advancing line. Across the entire front of Bratton's brigade lay a row of wounded and dead soldiers. The rest of the Union soldiers fled and Bratton's victorious Confederates held the field.

On the field of Appomattox the largest brigade in General Lee's army was Bratton's brigade. Fifteen hundred Carolinians, with loaded rifles ready for battle, were still following Bratton when the Confederate forces surrendered. In one body these soldiers all left Appomattox, and still under the command of their brave general marched home again.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

NATHAN G. EVANS' BRIGADE.

Nathan G. Evans. — N. G. Evans sprang from Welsh parentage. His early home was in Marion District. In 1848 he completed the course of study at West Point and was made an officer in the United States army. He then went to Texas to fight Indians.

Evans was connected with the Second United States Cavalry, and was called "Shanks" by his fellow-soldiers. Robert E. Lee was an officer in this same



NATHAN G. EVANS

regiment. When South Carolina went out of the Union (1860) Evans resigned his position in the regiment and started home to help his people. When he parted from Lee the latter said to him, "Good by, Shanks, I suppose they will make you a general." Some months later, Lee himself

resigned from the Second Cavalry and entered the Confederate army.

Evans at Manassas. — Evans was made a general, and took a leading part in the first great battle of the

war, at Manassas. The brigade commanded by Evans was placed in front of the famous Stone Bridge. The Fourth South Carolina Regiment (Col. J. B. E. Sloan) formed a part of his brigade. With only nine hundred men Evans kept back for several hours a force of nine thousand Federal soldiers. Later in the year 1861, at Ball's Bluff, Evans as commander of Mississippi and Virginia troops won a great victory.

With Lee. — Near the close of the year 1861 General Evans became the leader of a South Carolina brigade made up of the Seventeenth, Eighteenth, Twenty-Second, Twenty-Third, and Twenty-Sixth regiments and the Holcombe Legion. These soldiers helped to defend Charleston for several months. Then in the latter part of the year 1862 they went with Lee to Second Manassas and Sharpsburg, where they won much praise for their bravery. Then General Evans came again to take part in the defence of Charleston, but his brigade remained in North Carolina and Virginia under Stephen Elliott, Jr., one of the heroes of Fort Sumter.

Around Petersburg. — In the summer of 1864 Elliott's brigade formed a part of Lee's line of soldiers which was keeping Grant's army away from Richmond and Petersburg. Elliott and his men were holding the top of a hill. Grant's men dug a tunnel under this hill, filled it with powder and put a match to it. The top of the hill was blown into the air and a great many brave men of the Eighteenth and Twenty-Second South

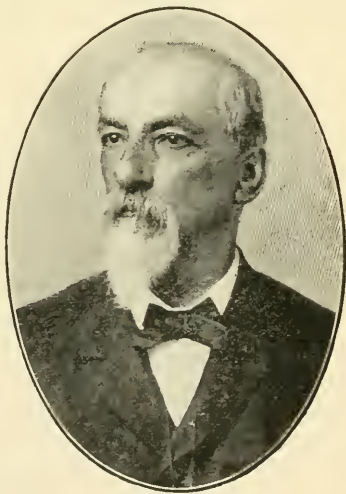
Carolina regiments were killed. Hundreds of the Federal soldiers rushed into the pit or crater made by the explosion. Elliott himself was struck by a rifle ball, but Col. F. W. McMaster took command of the brigade and made a gallant stand to keep back Grant's soldiers. Maj. John C. Haskell came rushing up with two heavy guns and began to throw big shot among the men in the crater. Other Confederates came to aid the Carolinians, and Grant's forces were driven back with severe loss. This famous victory of the Crater was due largely to the courage of the men in the brigade of Elliott and McMaster.

On the field of Appomattox the brigade was led by Gen. William H. Wallace. Early on the day of the surrender of Lee's army, Wallace's brigade fixed bayonets and drove back a portion of Grant's line for the distance of a mile. Then they laid down their arms.

CHAPTER XLIX.

THE BRIGADES OF MANIGAULT AND GIST IN THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY.

Manigault's Brigade. — In the year 1862 Gen. Arthur M. Manigault led a brigade into the Mississippi Valley to help the Confederates of that region. The Tenth and the Nineteenth South Carolina regiments formed a part of his force. In the battle of Murfreesboro, Tennessee, Manigault's men were in the front part of the Confederate army. Philip Sheridan's brigade was posted upon a ridge in a thicket of cedar trees, facing Manigault's brigade. As the latter rushed forward they met an awful fire from Sheridan's cannon and muskets, and were forced to fall back. Manigault was among his men and led them to the attack a second and a third time. This last rush of the Confederates was like a whirlwind. They shot down the gunners who were firing four of the enemy's cannon, poured a hot



A. M. MANIGAULT

rifle fire into the faces of Sheridan's troops, and then rushed upon them with fixed bayonets. Sheridan's brigade fled in haste from the thicket of cedars and carried with them in retreat all of the Federal forces on that part of the field of battle.

Manigault's brigade fought in the battle of Chickamauga, Tennessee, in September, 1863. The Tenth and Nineteenth South Carolina regiments, led by Colonel Pressley, saw their enemy standing behind a breastwork of logs upon the crest of a hill. They advanced steadily until they were within eighty yards of the logs. The fire in their faces was hot, but a hotter fire was now poured in by the enemy on their left. For a little while the Confederates were staggered, but they did not turn back. Pressley's voice urged the men forward. A dash was made for the logs. The Carolinians rushed over them, drove the enemy back, seized three heavy guns, and turned them against the defeated foe.

Gist's Brigade. — The Sixteenth and the Twenty-Fourth South Carolina regiments formed a part of the brigade of States Rights Gist. This body of Confederates went westward in 1863 and helped to fight against Grant's army in Mississippi.

In the battle of Chickamauga, the Twenty-Fourth Regiment was at the end of Gist's line. The brigade advanced into the woods and the South Carolina regiment came upon a log breastwork. A destructive fire was poured into their very faces, but the men stood

firm and sent back shot for shot. One third of the soldiers fell upon the field. Colonel Stevens had two horses killed under him. Five of the Carolina officers were killed and ten were wounded. Among those severely injured were "the iron-nerved Stevens and the intrepid Capers." When nearly all of the leaders were stretched upon the field, the rest of the troops were withdrawn. The officer last mentioned, Col. Ellison Capers, later a brigadier-general became afterwards the beloved bishop of the Episcopal Church of South Carolina.

Gist and Manigault with Johnston. — The brigades of both Gist and Manigault took part in Gen. Joseph E. Johnston's long struggle against General Sherman in



ELLISON CAPERS

Georgia, in 1864. In the fall of that year they marched with Gen. John B. Hood from Atlanta, Georgia, to Franklin, Tennessee. More than five hundred miles they went on foot through rain and mud and snow. The men had little clothing, many of them had no

blankets for covering at night, and large numbers were barefooted. During a part of the time they had nothing to eat but cornmeal. In spite of cold and hunger, the troops laughed and sang songs as they marched along. On the 30th of November, 1864, they helped to win the Confederate victory at Franklin. Manigault's brigade was in the thick of the fight, and Manigault himself was badly wounded. General Gist was slain while leading his men to the attack.

The following report about Gist's brigade was written by Col. Ellison Capers:

"Just before the charge was ordered the brigade passed over an elevation from which we beheld the magnificent spectacle the battlefield presented — bands were playing, general and staff officers and gallant couriers were riding in front of and between the lines. One hundred battle flags were waving in the smoke of battle and bursting shells were wreathing the air with great circles of smoke, while twenty thousand brave men were marching in perfect order against the foe. The sign inspired every man of the Twenty-Fourth with the sentiment of duty." Then General Gist rode along the front of the line. He "waved his hat to us, expressed his pride and confidence in the Twenty-Fourth, and rode away in the smoke of battle, never more to be seen by the men he had commanded on so many fields." On went the men, yelling and firing as they charged. The flag of the Twenty-Fourth was planted on the

enemy's works. Over these rushed the Confederates with bayonets fixed and the enemy fled. The battle was won, but Gist was dead and Manigault and Capers were lying wounded in front of the Federal breastworks. Both of these brigades fought on the fatal field of Nashville, in December, 1864. They came home again to fight to the last in the Carolinas under Joseph E. Johnston.

CHAPTER L.

WADE HAMPTON AND THE CAROLINA HORSEMEN IN THE CONFEDERATE WAR.

The Hamptons. — Three great Carolina soldiers have borne the name Wade Hampton. Each one of them knew how to ride and shoot and fight. We have seen the first Hampton dashing boldly into battle in the days of the Revolution. After that struggle he sat for a time as a lawmaker in Congress. In 1812 he was made a major-general and fought against the British in Canada. Then he laid away his sword and began to plant cotton. In this undertaking his success was so great that he was considered the wealthiest planter in the United States and was reputed to own three thousand slaves. He left to his son, the second Wade Hampton, hundreds of acres of land in South Carolina, Louisiana, and Mississippi.

Wade Hampton the second went into the battle of



A GARDEN AT THE HOME OF THE FIRST WADE HAMPTON
(Now the Woman's College, Columbia)

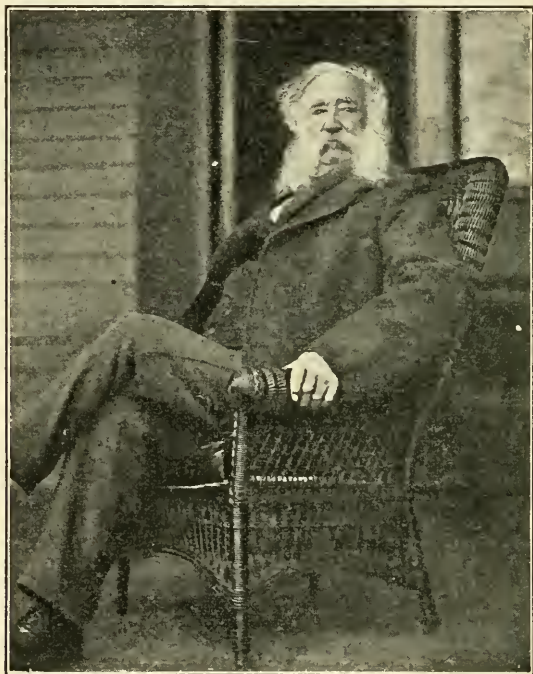
New Orleans, Jan. 8, 1815, by the side of Gen. Andrew Jackson, for he was an aide on "Old Hickory's" staff. When the victory was won, Colonel Hampton was sent to tell the glorious news to President Madison. The only way to make the journey was to ride through the forests from the Mississippi Valley to Columbia, South Carolina. The distance was about seven hundred and fifty miles. He rode one horse all the way. The noble animal swam rivers, plunged through swamps, and completed the journey in ten days and a half, an average of seventy-two miles a day. From Columbia

Colonel Hampton went by public conveyance to Washington and gave Jackson's message to the president. After the war he lived the rest of his days at Millwood, his beautiful home in the country, near Columbia.

Wade Hampton the Third. — Wade Hampton the third was born in the city of Charleston, March 28, 1818. He spent his early years beneath the tall, white pillars of his father's mansion, Millwood. There were fine horses in the stables and in the pastures and young Hampton knew and loved each one of them. It gave him keen pleasure to ride the wildest colt on the plantation. Much of his time was spent in the woods, gun in hand, looking for deer and wild turkeys. Famous men from near and far came as guests to the home, for the master of Millwood had a large heart and an open hand. Poor and rich alike were made welcome. The young son of the household, the bold rider and huntsman, was the favorite with all who enjoyed the hospitality of his father's home.

Special teachers, called tutors, came to live at Millwood to prepare young Hampton for college. Then he entered South Carolina College and completed the course of study. After that, a considerable period of time was given to the reading of law books. Young Hampton did not wish, however, to become a lawyer. At the death of his father he took charge of the large estates that had been handed down by the first Wade Hampton.

The third Wade Hampton at thirty years of age was a man of very large wealth. Every one of his friends, however, shared in the blessings that were secured by his riches. To all whom he met Hampton was open handed



WADE HAMPTON THE THIRD

and full of generous sympathy. He finally gave up all that he had to help his own people of the South and died

a poor man. To his negro servants he was just and kind and liberal. Much of his time was spent in the open air on horseback, either riding through the cotton fields or dashing through the woods in the chase. For hours and hours he would follow the course of a mountain stream, fishing for trout. Each winter was spent on his plantation in Mississippi, and there in the swamps he hunted the bear. So great was the bodily strength of Hampton that he was able to lift from the ground to the horse's shoulders the body of a large bear slain in the chase, and thus carry it home. It was said that no other man in all that region was strong enough to lift a weight like that.

Wade Hampton in the Early Part of the War between the States. — When the war began, in 1861, Hampton raised a body of foot soldiers, horsemen, and Capt. J. F. Hart's battery, called the Hampton Legion. With only the foot soldiers of this command he moved rapidly northward from Carolina, and arrived at Manassas, in Virginia, on the morning of the first battle on that field. His six hundred riflemen took position near the Stone Bridge and for two hours kept back a large body of the enemy. Then Hampton led his men forward with a rush to capture the Federal cannon. A bullet struck him and he had to halt, but his men charged on and two of the cannon were seized. Afterwards at Seven Pines, near Richmond, he led an entire brigade of infantry. So fierce was the fighting that one half of his

men fell upon the field. During a part of the severe fighting in defence of Richmond, called the Seven Days' Battles, Hampton led one of Stonewall Jackson's brigades of foot soldiers. Under the hottest fire he was always calm and bold and skillful.

Made a General. — In July, 1862, Col. Wade Hampton was made a brigadier-general and placed in command of one of the two brigades of cavalry led by Gen. J. E. B. Stuart. These horsemen were a part of the Confederate army that followed Robert E. Lee. Hampton's brigade was made up as follows: The Hampton Legion of Cavalry, led by Col. M. C. Butler, the Jefferson Davis Legion (Mississippi), Cobb Legion (Georgia), First North Carolina Cavalry, and Tenth Virginia Cavalry. Capt. J. F. Hart's South Carolina battery of light artillery was afterwards added.

General Hampton was then forty-four years of age. He was tall and broad shouldered and sat erect upon a fine, spirited horse. Strength and gracefulness marked every movement of the skillful rider. A heavy beard covered his face, and his eye glowed with kindly sympathy. He wore a plain gray sack coat; his soft black hat had a wide brim. Hampton's manner was full of genial Carolinian courtesy. He was as polite to a private soldier as to the commander-in-chief of the army. The very tone of his voice told of his love for his men. When the enemy came in sight, Hampton's eye began to flash and his voice rang out like a trumpet. He was clear

headed and cool and wise and yet always eager for the fight. When the right moment came the daring leader called to his men to follow and sword in hand spurred his horse in a wild gallop into the very midst of the enemy's horsemen.

Brave Deeds of Hampton's Cavalry. — When Lee's army was marching through Maryland (September, 1862) towards Sharpsburg, Hampton kept watch in the



HOUSE GIVEN TO GENERAL HAMPTON AFTER THE WAR
BY THE PEOPLE OF SOUTH CAROLINA¹

rear. A strong Federal force began to follow the Confederates, and near the Monocacy River more than one thousand Federal infantry and cavalry, with one cannon, seized the road and cut Hampton off. The way

¹ This history of South Carolina was written in this house.

had to be opened. Lieut. John Meighan, of the Second South Carolina Cavalry, with about one hundred and forty swordsmen, nearly all of whom were Carolinians, rode straight at the enemy. Crack, crack, went their pistols and down fell the gunners and horses of the big gun. With cut and thrust and yell they drove their horses among the enemy, killing and wounding and making prisoners. The rest of the enemy fled and Hampton's command had an open way for the march.

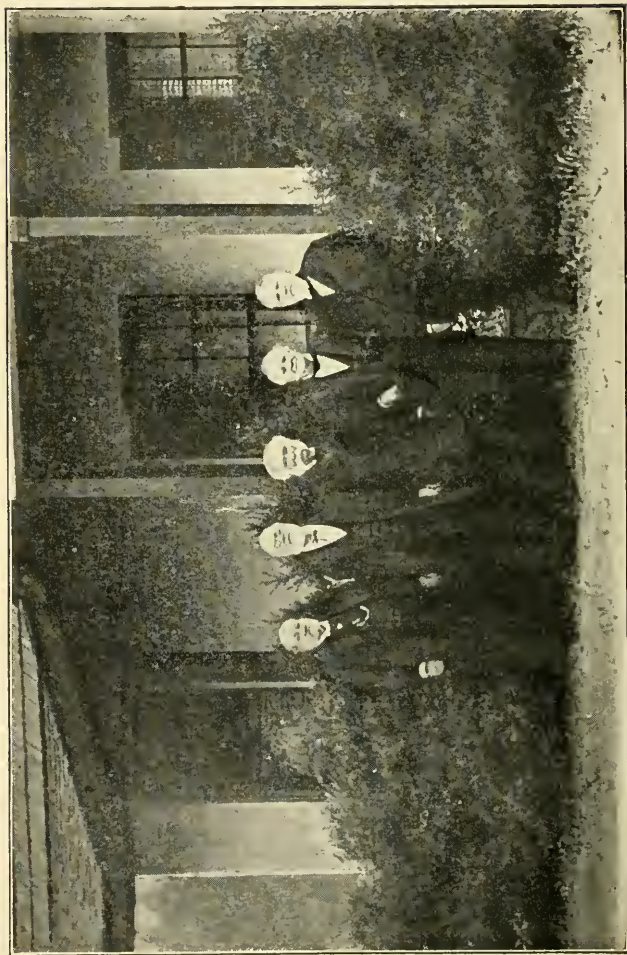
In October, 1862, Hampton was with J. E. B. Stuart in his famous ride entirely around McClellan's army. Hampton was sent to keep order in the town of Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, while the Confederates were passing through. The Pennsylvanians were surprised to find that Hampton and his troopers were quiet, agreeable gentlemen, without any desire to disturb the homes of the people or to destroy private property. McClellan's cavalry galloped their horses almost to death in the vain effort to capture the bold Confederates. They reached the Potomac in time to receive a parting salute of grapeshot from one of Hampton's guns.

Near the end of November, 1862, when Lee and Burnside were facing each other at Fredericksburg, Virginia, on opposite sides of the Rappahannock River, Hampton picked out about two hundred of his horsemen and rode rapidly across that stream towards the enemy's rear. All day he marched. At night the men lay on the ground and rested, holding their horses by the bridle

reins. At four o'clock in the morning they swung silently into the saddle and made their way through the woods. Just at daybreak, with wild hurrahs and pistol shots, they dashed into the camp of the Federal cavalry. Nearly one hundred prisoners, as well as one hundred horses, were brought away, and the General's son, Preston Hampton, was sent to General Lee as the proud bearer of two captured flags.

On the morning of the 10th of December, 1862, the snow was lying deep in northern Virginia, and the two great armies were preparing to fight at Fredericksburg. Hampton selected five hundred and twenty of his troopers, and again set forth to strike the Federal rear. He made a wide circuit towards the Potomac. The men had thin clothing and little to eat. Three nights they rested by lying down in the snow. With jokes and laughter they rode along with Hampton, and at daybreak dashed into the town of Dumfries. A large number of prisoners and wagons was brought away from the very midst of Burnside's army.

Hampton was now reënforced by the First South Carolina Cavalry, under Col. John L. Black. The Tenth Virginia was transferred to another command. On the 17th of December Hampton was over the river again with four hundred horsemen. Into the town of Occoquan he dashed and seized one hundred and fifty prisoners and twenty wagons laden with stores. A large body of the enemy attacked Hampton, but he



ATTORNEY-GENERAL YOUNG; CHIEF JUSTICE MCIVER; GENERAL HAMPTON; COLONEL
JOSEPH D. POPE; GENERAL MCGOWAN (reading from left to right)

ferried the wagons across the Rappahannock in one small boat, while Capt. T. H. Clark's sharpshooters kept the Federal forces at bay. "The plan and execution of these expeditions were bold and admirable," wrote Gen. Robert E. Lee.

On Christmas Day in the same year a body of eighteen hundred Confederate horsemen, under J. E. B. Stuart, was moving across the upper Rappahannock. One half of them was from Hampton's brigade, and much of the actual fighting was done by M. C. Butler. The Confederates placed themselves between the Federal army and Washington and took possession of the telegraph line. Stuart's operator sent a message over the wires to President Lincoln, and asked him to furnish to his army better mules than those that had been recently captured by Hampton !

On the field of Brandy Station, in Virginia, June 9, 1863, Hampton led his horsemen in a headlong charge against a strong brigade of Federal cavalry. The Confederates said that the general's eyes were "snapping fire" as he spurred his horse to the head of his command. In order to leave his sword arm free, Hampton threw his coat to his young son, Preston, and asked him to hold it. The gallant boy held the coat for a moment and then threw it on the ground. "I came here to fight, not to carry coats," he said, and then dashed forward in the charge with the rest of his father's men.

At Gettysburg, on the 3d of July, 1863, Hampton had

two hand to hand fights. In the first, a Federal horseman, with drawn sword, rode at the general. Hampton leveled his revolver, but it snapped five times, for the powder had become damp the night before. Down came the sword in a glancing blow upon the general's forehead. The blood spurted over his face and into his eyes, but now the sixth chamber of the revolver did its work quickly and well and the foeman fell dead.

Later in the day Hampton rode forward to help one of his own men who was hard pressed by a Federal horseman. The blood was still trickling down from his forehead into one of his eyes, partly blinding him. For this reason the Federal soldier was able to come near and to give Hampton a cut in the head. Then the latter's great, heavy sword flashed in the air and came down upon the cavalryman's skull; the blade went through to the chin, and the brave Federal horseman was no more. A piece of shell struck Hampton's thigh, and his own men bore him away from that awful field of blood.

Hampton Cavalry Leader in Lee's Army. — On the 11th of May, 1864, Gen. J. E. B. Stuart was shot down in battle near Richmond. The next day General Hampton was made commander of all the horsemen belonging to Lee's army. Wherever he rode among his men a fresh enthusiasm was kindled in their hearts. His careful eye seemed to mark the skill of each one of his followers. They loved him and were eager to follow their daring commander into the thickest part of the fight. About



CONFEDERATE MONUMENT, COLUMBIA

seven thousand Confederate cavalrymen, mounted on lean, hungry horses, formed his command. The First Brigade of Hampton's corps, consisting of the Fourth,

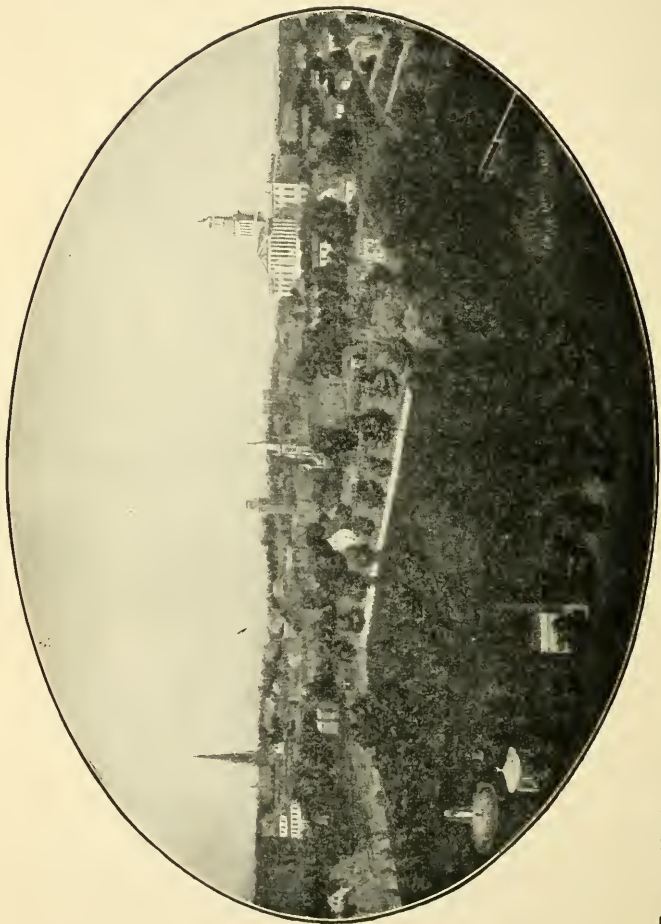
Fifth, and Sixth South Carolina regiments, was led by Gen. M. C. Butler.

Grant was then forcing his way through the Wilderness toward Richmond. Lee was fighting him at every step. On the 28th of May Hampton's horsemen met the cavalry of Grant's army, under Sheridan, at Hawes's Shop, on the Pamunkey River. Hampton drove Sheridan back, only to find that Grant's whole army was drawn up behind the Federal horsemen. The Confederate cavalymen were then withdrawn, except a body of one thousand Carolinians, who held a dense wood on Hampton's right. They were dismounted and armed with long-barreled, muzzle-loading rifles; most of them had never before been engaged in battle. For seven hours they kept up the fight against superior numbers, until Hampton himself rode into the woods and brought them out.

Early in June, 1864, the Wilderness campaign was closed by the utter defeat of Grant's army at Cold Harbor, in front of Richmond. Grant then sent Sheridan with nine thousand horsemen to break up the railroads in the northern part of Virginia. Hampton at once led about forty-seven hundred Confederate horsemen by a shorter way and placed himself between Sheridan and the railway which he was seeking. On the morning of the 11th of June a part of Hampton's force, including Butler's South Carolinians, attacked Sheridan and drove him back. The rest of Hampton's men were so far away, however, that Sheridan's men swung around

to Butler's rear. The battle seemed to be going against Hampton. The gallant general rode everywhere among his men and led them back some distance to the line of the railroad, near Trevilian's Station. He dismounted his horsemen and placed them behind the railway embankment and some country fences. Their long-barreled rifles were ready. In the afternoon of the next day Sheridan's army charged seven times against Hampton's line. Each time they were driven back by the cool, deadly aim of the Confederates. Then some of Hampton's horsemen struck Sheridan's flank. The whole Confederate force rushed forward with a yell, and Sheridan left the field and rode back to join Grant's army. Hampton pursued, and at Samaria Church, on the northern bank of the James River, the Confederate horsemen made a gallant charge and gave Sheridan another heavy blow. Sheridan crossed the river and saved himself from further trouble at that time. His Trevilian campaign had been a failure.

In the long struggle between Grant and Lee at Petersburg, Hampton's horsemen bore an important part. He organized the Confederate cavalry as mounted riflemen. They fought on horseback with the sabre and pistol and when dismounted they used the long Enfield rifle. At Sappington Church (June 29, 1864) Hampton came upon a large body of Federal cavalry. Butler's horsemen made a circuit and struck them in the flank; Hampton himself led the assault in front, and the enemy



COLUMBIA BEFORE BURNING

From an old print

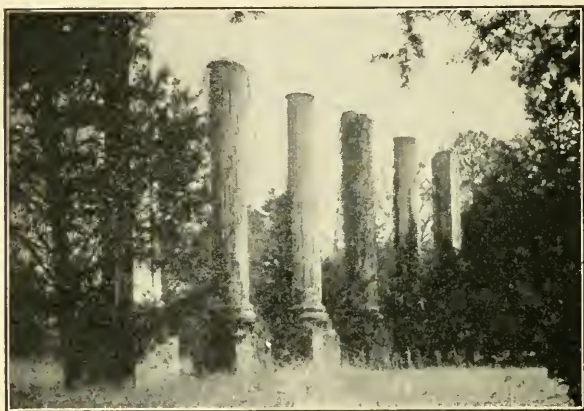
was routed. At Reams's Station (August 25) Butler's men advanced on foot through the woods and captured one of the lines of the enemy's fortification. At Burgess's Mill (October 27) Hampton's horsemen rode at the enemy in a wild, victorious charge. Preston Hampton, the general's son, was struck by a bullet and fell from his horse. General Hampton leaped to the ground, spoke some words of tender farewell to the dying boy, kissed him, and then galloped forward to join his men in their final battle.

Some of the South Carolina Horsemen not under Hampton. — Some of the Carolina horsemen of Lee's army were not under Hampton's personal command. These formed the cavalry brigade of Gen. Mart. W. Gary, who aided in the immediate defence of Richmond. Gallant and brave, they fought nobly to the end. In October, 1864, Col. A. C. Haskell rode forward in front of Richmond with about one hundred horsemen of the Seventh South Carolina Regiment. Their sabres were bright and sharp. With fierce courage they rode straight into the masses of an entire Federal brigade of cavalry (Kautz's) and put them all to flight.

Gary's brigade remained with Lee until Richmond fell, and fought valiantly on the morning of the day when the Confederate heroes surrendered at Appomattox.

Hampton to the Defence of South Carolina. — In January, 1865, Hampton went southward to help to defend South Carolina against Sherman. Butler's

Carolina horsemen rode home with him. Near the Georgia border they began to fight the cruel foe, who was burning houses and laying lands waste. On the morning of the 17th of February, Hampton sat on his horse in the principal street of Columbia. As he looked about him, he saw that all was safe. Thus far he had



RUINS OF MILLWOOD

kept back the men who used the torch. Then he rode away northward to unite his force with that of Gen. J. E. Johnston, and Sherman's fierce soldiers came slowly into the beautiful city and set it on fire. Hampton's house at Millwood, like hundreds of other mansions, was given to the flames.

Neither fire nor sword, however, could tame the spirit of the Carolinians who followed Hampton. At

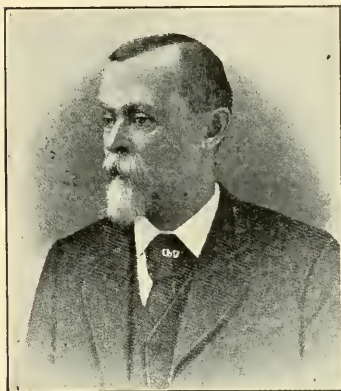
Fayetteville, North Carolina, on March 10, 1865, Hampton gave Sherman's cavalry a hard blow. At early dawn, with drawn sabres, about a thousand Confederate horsemen dashed into the camp where five thousand Federal cavalymen lay asleep. In among the tents rode the Confederates, led by Hampton and Butler. The enemy tried to flee, but many of them were ridden down or were disabled with the sword. The whole body of Federal cavalry (Kilpatrick's) was scattered, and nearly one thousand of them were slain, wounded, or captured. And thus the fighting went bravely on until the end came with the surrender of J. E. Johnston's army.

CHAPTER LI.

JOHNSON HAGOOD'S BRIGADE.

Johnson Hagood. — Johnson Hagood was born in Barnwell District, in 1829. At the age of eighteen he completed the course of study at the Citadel, the State Military Academy, in Charleston. When he was twenty-one he became a lawyer. On the 21st of July, 1861, he commanded a South Carolina regiment in the battle of Manassas. In 1862 he was placed in command of a brigade of South Carolinians, which fought for two years in defence of the city of Charleston. On James Island and at Battery Wagner they watched and suffered and fought gallantly to keep the enemy away.

At Petersburg, 1864. — In May, 1864, Hagood marched to Petersburg, Virginia, as brigadier-general in command of the Eleventh, Twenty-First, Twenty-Fifth, and



William Hagood

Twenty-Seventh South Carolina regiments and Rion's South Carolina Battalion. These men boldly charged the enemy's breastworks, and drove Benjamin F. Butler's forces away from Petersburg and helped to defeat Butler at Bermuda Hundred. In one of these struggles the enemy's fire was so hot that the flag carried by Rion's men had sixty-seven bul-

let holes made in it. Hagood's men won honor for themselves also at Drewry's Bluff on the James River.

On the 21st of August, 1864, Hagood led about seven hundred of his men against a Federal breastwork. The muskets and cannon of the Federal forces cut down Carolinians at every step of the advance, but the rest went bravely onward. About two hundred of Hagood's soldiers entered the enemy's works. A Federal officer rode among them, seized the flag of the Twenty-Seventh Regiment, and called upon them to surrender. Hagood

himself rushed forward on foot and shot this officer. Hagood mounted the horse and gave the flag of the 27th to his attendant, J. D. Stoney. He then led away those troops who were able to return with him. Only about three hundred were left out of the seven hundred who made this gallant charge.

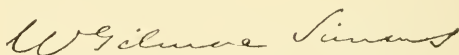
While Grant's army was trying to get into Petersburg, Hagood's brigade stood on guard in the rain and in the snow to keep him out. The Confederates were clad in rags and had little to eat, but they fought bravely and held their position. Sixty-seven days without change the men of Hagood's brigade remained in the trenches and aided in repulsing Grant's great army.

With Johnston. — In January, 1865, the brigade started to Wilmington, North Carolina. Before all the men arrived that place was captured by the Federal forces. Then Hagood went to the aid of Joseph E. Johnston, and his brigade surrendered at Goldsboro, N. C., as a part of Johnston's army. After the war General Hagood was elected governor of his native state.

CHAPTER LII.

SIMMS, HAYNE, TIMROD, — POETS OF CAROLINA AND
OF THE SOUTH.

William Gilmore Simms. — On the 17th of April, 1806, a child was born at Charleston who was afterwards to labor and to suffer much for his native state. When the child's mother died, only two years after his birth, the grief of the husband was so great that his hair became white in one week and he rode away from Charleston to spend the rest of his life in the Mississippi Valley. Thus the boy, whose name was William Gilmore Simms,

A handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "W Gilmore Simms". The signature is written in dark ink on a light background.

THE AUTOGRAPH OF GILMORE SIMMS

was left to grow up under the care of his grandmother. He was sent to the schools in Charleston only about four years and during that time learned to read and write. Then at the age of ten he was put to work in a drug store, in order that he might learn to be a doctor. During these early years he read Bunyan's "Pilgrim's Progress" and many other books. For hours at a time he would sit at the feet of his grandmother and listen eagerly to the stories she told him. When she talked about the skill and courage of her own

father as a rifleman fighting in defence of Charleston during the Revolution the blue-gray eyes of young Gilmore Simms would shine. When the grandmother told him about ghosts and other strange creatures, his eyes grew wide with wonder, and he began to think out ghost stories for himself.

In those early days Simms was in the habit of sitting up late at night for the purpose of reading story-books and poems. He began, also, to write poems. His grandmother told him that he must go to bed at an early hour, because, for one reason, she was too poor to furnish candles for so much reading. Simms was determined to read, how-



W. GILMORE SIMMS

ever. He carried a large box into his room, and placed a candle in the box. Then he thrust his head into the box and held the book close to his face. When his grandmother came to his door and found no light shining through the crevices, she supposed that Gilmore had gone to bed. The reading thus went on until the book was finished.

When Simms reached his eighteenth year, he left the

drug store and began to read law books. During the twenty-first year of his age he was a lawyer in Charleston, and in that time he made six hundred dollars. Then he laid his law books on the shelf and for the rest of his life gave his time to writing poetry and stories and histories.

Among his early friends in Charleston were Stephen Elliott and Hugh Swinton Legaré, both of whom were famous Carolina writers.

The first wife of Simms, whom he had married when very young, died. Three years later he married a second time and went to live at Woodlands, a plantation on the Edisto River, near Barnwell. He soon became known as the chief writer in the South. Simms was nearly six feet in height and as straight as a poplar. His shoulders were broad. He had a fine brow and a strong, open face.

Woodlands, his country home, was a large brick house with a wide portico in front. A large room on the lower floor was the library, where he wrote his books. There during the winter months he welcomed his friends. Every summer he lived in Charleston. For many years he gathered around him at Woodlands a great company of scholars, poets, teachers, and story writers. Among these were Hayne and Timrod, the Carolina poets. About seventy negro servants planted and cultivated the crops and kept the table of Simms well supplied. These negroes had all of their

wants supplied and were always treated with the greatest kindness.

When the crisis of 1861 came, Simms was heart and soul with the people of his state. He used pen and voice in helping to guide the movement for Southern independence. He made suggestions about placing



WOODLANDS

cannon in position to fire on Fort Sumter, and these suggestions were followed. Simms was the first to think of floating batteries, that is, cannon made to float about the harbor on rafts. He cheered and encouraged the soldiers of the South to fight to the bitter end.

Simms had his own severe losses. Just as the war began, fever carried away two of his sons. Two years later one wing of the beautiful home Woodlands was

destroyed by fire. Then his beloved wife was called away from him. He arose from severe illness to face these sorrows with courage and calmness.

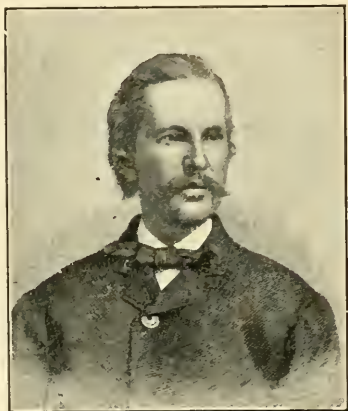
In 1865 Simms went to Columbia to become editor of a daily paper. His own misfortunes became greater, but he was none the less brave. He wrote for the paper the story of the final burning by Sherman's men of his home Woodlands, which had been partly rebuilt. Without a murmur he gave an account of the destruction of the books which he had spent a lifetime in collecting. When Sherman's army came and set fire to Columbia (Feb. 17, 1865) Simms stood among the blazing ruins of the city and wrote the story of the awful deed. Calmly and nobly he continued to work and to speak words of comfort and cheer to his own people.

"I have faith in God," wrote Simms to a friend. "He may punish us, and we must suffer, for this is the meed of our desert; but He will not let us sink. I have faith in His promise, in His mercy, and I know that after this tribulation our peace shall return once more, our prosperity, our friends." Simms died in 1870. A bronze bust of him made by Ward stands on the Battery in Charleston..

Paul Hamilton Hayne. — Paul Hamilton Hayne was born at Charleston in 1830. When his father died, Paul Hayne's uncle, Senator Robert Y. Hayne, gave a home to the child. Paul read law books, but he did

not care to become a lawyer. He wrote many beautiful verses, and in 1855 published a book of poems. In 1857 another poetical volume was issued. In 1861 Hayne shouldered a musket and went into the Confederate army. He listened to the music of rifle bullets and wrote stirring poems about "Stonewall Jackson," "My Motherland," and other subjects dear to Confederate hearts.

Hayne's home and property were destroyed during the war. Then he built a little house among the pine trees near Augusta, Georgia. There he "kept the wolf from the door only by the point of his pen." Sickness and poverty, however,

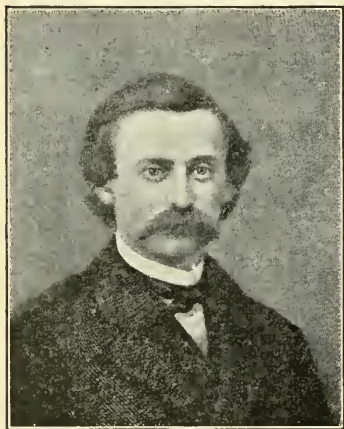


PAUL HAMILTON HAYNE

could not prevent his writing messages of good cheer for the people of the South. For twenty years after the war ended, he helped them in the hard struggle to rebuild their country. Then Hayne died in peace, in 1886.

Henry Timrod. — Henry Timrod's grandfather was a Carolina soldier during the days of the Revolution. His father was a soldier also and fought in the war against the Seminole Indians of Florida. Henry Tim-

rod, the Carolina poet, was born in Charleston in 1829. He went to the same school as Paul Hayne. Timrod was shy and had little to say, but he read many books and liked to ramble through the fields and woods. When he grew to be a man he studied law in the office of Mr. James L. Petigru, who was then the chief lawyer in South Carolina. But Timrod soon left the law and gave up his life to writing poetry. Many



Henry Timrod

beautiful and noble poems came from his pen before the war opened.

When the war came, Timrod took his rifle and went out to fight. He then wrote battle hymns for the Confederates to sing. Among these were "Carolina," "Charleston," and "A Cry to Arms." Timrod's health did not hold out and he came home, but his pen was always busy. As his

strength faded away, his voice became ever more cheerful, and he urged his countrymen to fight on. He was in Columbia when Sherman burned the city. Simms and Hayne were his friends. Together the three friends suffered, and together they kept on working.

The three voices were like one voice when they spoke words of comfort to the people of the South. Timrod was the first of the three to pass away, for he died in the fall of 1867. Among his latest lines were those written in honor of the Confederates who were laid to rest in Magnolia Cemetery in Charleston: —

Sleep sweetly in your humble graves,
Sleep, martyrs of a fallen cause ;
Though yet no marble column craves
The pilgrim here to pause.

In seeds of laurel in the earth
The blossom of your fame is blown,
And somewhere, waiting for its birth,
The shaft is in the stone.

PART V.
THE MEN OF OUR OWN TIME.

1865——

CHAPTER LIII.

WADE HAMPTON BRINGS SOUTH CAROLINA AGAIN
UNDER THE RULE OF WHITE MEN.

Conditions in 1865. — The Carolinians who had followed Lee and Johnston returned to their state in 1865 to find many of their old homes lying in ashes. Their farms were waste places. The third Confederate war governor, A. G. Magrath, had been led from his office to a Federal prison. Negro soldiers wearing the uniform of the United States army were stationed in the cities and towns, and all of the affairs of the commonwealth were placed under their control. The rule of these armed negroes was a grievous burden. They were unjust and cruel and shot down many quiet white citizens.

South Carolina Enters the Union. — On the 13th of June, 1865, President Andrew Johnson appointed Benjamin F. Perry, of Greenville, as provisional governor of the state of South Carolina. Governor Perry

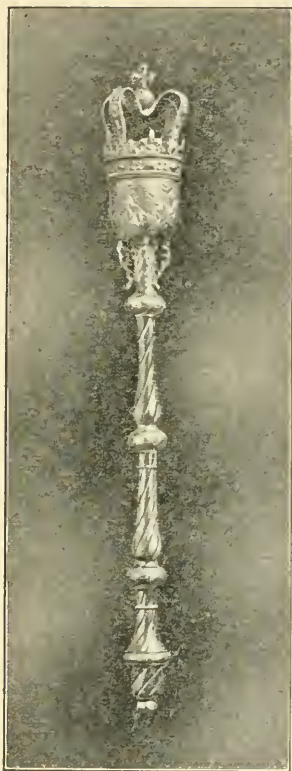
at once called the leading citizens to meet in convention at Columbia. These framed a new constitution and set up a government in the state. James L. Orr, of Anderson, was made governor, but the Federal soldiers who



GOVERNOR'S MANSION, COLUMBIA

remained in the state interfered with his management of the affairs of the people.

South Carolina under Military Rule. — In 1867 the country that had so long borne the honorable name of the Commonwealth of South Carolina was called Military District Number 2. Soldiers were put in entire control of the people. Judge A. P. Aldrich, of the Superior Court, received a written order from a Federal officer that he could no longer sit as judge. Judge Aldrich opened his court, and read the order aloud. Then



MADE IN HOUSE OF
REPRESENTATIVES¹

laying aside his gown he directed the sheriff "to let the court stand adjourned while justice is stifled." Then in the following year (1868) a negro government was formed. Every negro man had the right to vote and to hold office. White men who had helped the Confederacy could not vote. This meant that almost all of the white people of the state were cut off from taking part in the government.

The period from 1868 to 1874 was known as the time when South Carolina was under the "Rule of the Robbers." All power was in the hands of the negroes and a few white men from the North and West. The

latter were called "carpetbaggers," because it was said

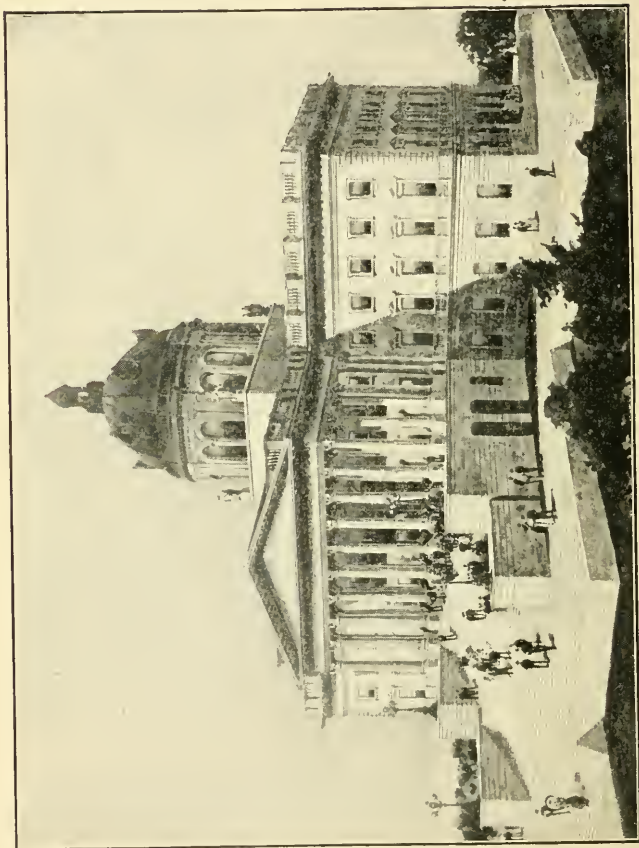
¹ This mace was made in London in 1756, and has rested on the speaker's table in the South Carolina House of Representatives since that time. On state occasions it is borne before the House by the sergeant-at-arms.

that they carried all of their luggage in hand bags made of carpet.

South Carolina Officials. — During this period two very bad men held the office of governor. These were Robert K. Scott (1868-1872), a white man from Ohio, and Franklin J. Moses, Jr. (1872-1874), a white man from South Carolina. Three of the state's congressmen at Washington were negroes. More than half of the members of the legislature were negroes, and most of these could neither read nor write. They spent nearly all of their time in the legislature in stealing the money of the people. Thousands and thousands of dollars were taken by these black thieves. Neither the property nor the lives of white people were safe anywhere in the state.

Checks on Misgovernment. — The first relief came when Daniel H. Chamberlain, a lawyer from Massachusetts, was made governor, and instituted many changes for the better. Years afterwards (1904) Governor Chamberlain said that the lesson taught by his administration was that with a majority of negro voters in the state "it never was within the bounds of possibility to keep up a bearable government."

Hampton as Governor Restores White Rule. — The only complete remedy possible was to bring the state entirely under the control of the white voters. This was done by Gen. Wade Hampton, in 1876. His friends asked him to become Democratic candidate



THE CAPITOL, COLUMBIA

for the governorship and he consented. He went throughout the state and spoke to great crowds of people in every county. Companies of horsemen rode with Hampton wherever he went. These horsemen wore red shirts as a kind of uniform. Hampton advised his followers to be quiet and peaceable, and they heeded him. On one occasion a great crowd of white citizens came to Columbia armed with rifles and pistols. They were ready to fight for General Hampton. The great leader, however, urged his friends to go home and leave him to strive for his rights according to peaceable methods. They went and Hampton was finally declared governor. From that time white citizens have managed the affairs of the commonwealth.

Governor Hampton delivered his inaugural address from a platform in one of the streets of Columbia. He spoke, in part, as follows:

“ It is with feelings of the profoundest solicitude that I assume the arduous duties and grave responsibilities of the high position to which the people of South Carolina have called me. It is amid events unprecedented in this republic that I take the chair as chief magistrate of this state. After years of misrule, corruption, and anarchy, brought upon us by venal and unprincipled political adventurers, the honest people of the state, without regard to party or race, with one voice demanded reform and with one purpose devoted themselves earnestly and solemnly to this end. With a lofty patriotism never surpassed, with a patience never equalled, with a courage

never excelled, and with a sublime sense of duty which finds scarcely a parallel in the history of the world, they subordinated every personal feeling to the public weal and consecrated themselves to the sacred work of redeeming their prostrate state. To the accomplishment of this task they dedicated themselves with unfaltering confidence and with unshaken faith, trusting alone to the justice of their cause and commending that cause reverently to the protection of the Almighty.

.

“A great task is before the conservative party of this state. They entered on this contest with a platform so broad, so strong, so liberal, that every honest citizen could stand upon it. They recognized and accepted the amendments of the constitution in good faith; they pledged themselves to work reform and to establish good government; they promised to keep up an efficient system of public education; and they declared solemnly that all citizens of South Carolina of both races and of both parties, should be regarded as equals in the eye of the law; all to be protected in the enjoyment of every political right now possessed by them.

“To the faithful observance of these pledges we stand committed, and I, as the representative of the conservative party, hold myself bound by every dictate of honor and of good faith to use every effort to have these pledges redeemed fully and honestly. It is due not only to ourselves but to the colored people of the state that wise, just, and liberal measures should prevail in our legislation. We owe much of our late success to these colored voters, who were brave enough to rise above the prejudice of race, and honest enough to throw off the shackles of party in

their determination to save the state. To those who, misled by their fears, their ignorance, or by evil counseling, turned a deaf ear to our appeals, we should not be vindictive, but magnanimous. Let us show to all of them that the true interests of both races can best be secured by cultivating peace and promoting prosperity among all classes of our fellow-citizens. I rely confidently on the support of the members of the general assembly in my efforts to attain these laudable ends, and I trust that all branches of the government will unite cordially in this patriotic work. If so united and working with resolute will and earnest determination, we may hope soon to see the dawn of a brighter day for our state. God in His infinite mercy grant that it may come speedily, and may He shower the richest blessings of peace and happiness on our whole people."

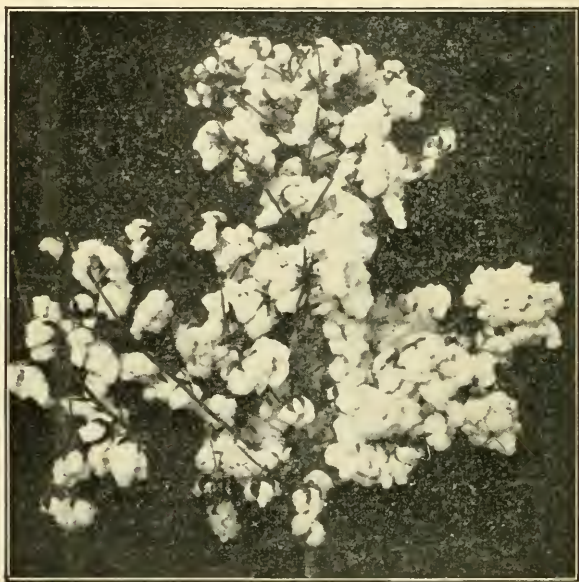


A VIEW OF CHARLESTON

CHAPTER LIV.

THE SOUTH CAROLINA OF TO-DAY

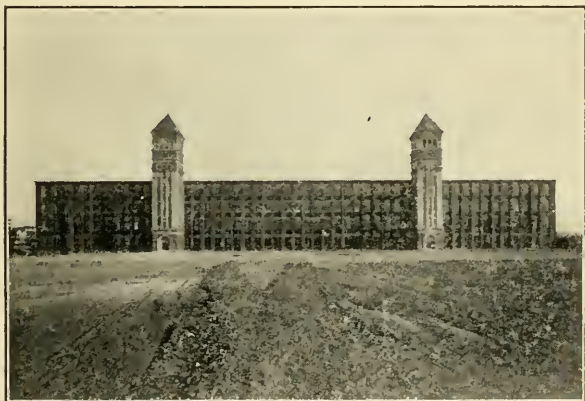
Energy of the Veterans. — The Confederate soldiers of 1865 went to work with a will to rebuild their homes.



COTTON

These soldiers and their sons have restored the commonwealth, until she has become again strong and prosperous. Fences have been built around the plantations and every autumn now the fields are white with cotton.

Rice is still planted near the coast. Wheat and corn wave in the fields of the upper country. Herds of cattle are seen everywhere. Fruit trees of every kind flourish. At Summerville an entire plantation is given up to the cultivation of tea. Almost every kind of



OLYMPIA COTTON MILL, COLUMBIA (THE LARGEST COTTON MILL UNDER ONE ROOF IN THE WORLD)

grain and fruit and flower grows in the fertile soil of South Carolina.

Shining steel rails have been laid for miles and miles, so that railroads and electric railways run in every direction throughout the commonwealth. The wonderful story of the making of these highways of travel must be read in larger books than this.

Cotton Mills. — Another story must be read in other books than this. That is the marvellous history of



THE COLLEGE OF CHARLESTON

the building of the cotton mills. In 1870 there were only twelve cotton factories in this state. The number was increased to fourteen in 1880 and to thirty-four in 1890. Then the work was multiplied. In 1900 the spindles of eighty mills were buzzing and their looms were clattering at the task of changing cotton into clothing. To-day there is a still greater number of mills. At Columbia stands the Olympia, the largest cotton mill under one roof in the world. From the mountains to the sea, thousands of men, women, boys, and girls are now working every day in the South Carolina mills.

Upbuilding of the Schools. — The story of the schools of South Carolina in our own time is a story of growth.

In 1880 there was a great army of white children of school age in South Carolina, 101,000 in number. At the present time this army is more than 150,000 strong. New public schools all over the state are built each year for this great host of young people who are soon to be the men and women of South Carolina. In 1905 there were 2,654 buildings in South Carolina, in which 3,451 teachers were training the white children of the state. There were also 2,306 buildings and 2,365 teachers for the negro children of the state. The older and larger schools of our commonwealth are growing stronger from day to day. Let us see where these are located.



COLUMBIA FEMALE COLLEGE

In Charleston, the old city by the sea, stands the oldest college in South Carolina. This bears the name of the College of Charleston. In the same place is



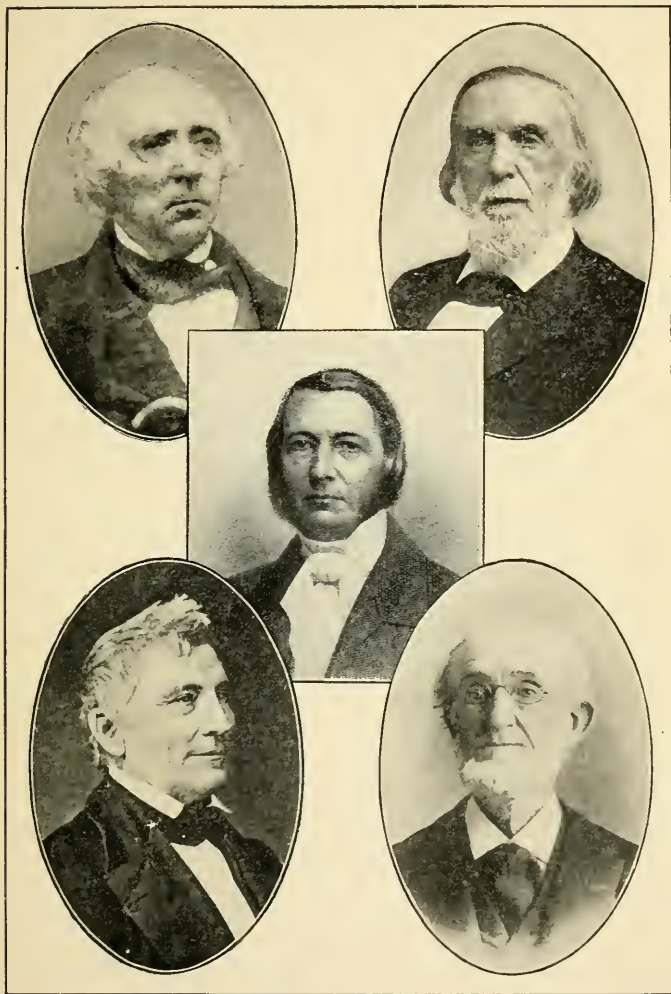
MONUMENT TO
WILLIAM MOFFATT GRIER¹

located the famous Citadel, the South Carolina Military Academy, which has sent so many gallant soldiers into the field. At Mount Pleasant, on the north side of Charleston Harbor, is located the Lutheran Seminary, where Lutheran ministers are trained to preach the Gospel.

In Columbia, the capital city, stands the University of South Carolina. In January, 1905, the great school known as the South Carolina College called her sons together to celebrate the completion of the first hundred years of her life. In 1906 the college was changed to a university. For nearly eighty years the Columbia Theological Seminary has kept up the work of training Presbyterian ministers. The

¹ President of Erskine College, 1871-1899.

A GROUP OF SOUTH CAROLINA EDUCATORS (See opposite page): William C. Preston, U. S. Senator, 1833-1842, President of South Carolina College, 1846-1851; James H. Carlisle, President of Wofford College; James H. Thornwell, President of South Carolina College, 1852-1855, Professor in Columbia Seminary; John Bachman, Professor in Charleston College, Founder of Lutheran Seminary and one of the Founders of Newberry College; James C. Furman, President of Furman University.



A GROUP OF SOUTH CAROLINA EDUCATORS

WILLIAM C. PRESTON

JAMES H. CARLISLE

JAMES H. THORNWELL

JOHN BACHMAN

JAMES C. FURMAN

College for Women and the Columbia Female College have been added in more recent years to the schools of the capital.

Erskine College, the Due West Theological Seminary, and the Due West Female College, all located at Due West, belong to the Associate Reformed Presbyterians. Furman University and Greenville Female College, both at Greenville, are Baptist schools. Chicora College for women, located at Greenville, is a Presbyterian school. Wofford College at Spartanburg was



CLEMSON COLLEGE

founded by the Methodists. Dr. James W. Carlisle, at one time president of Wofford, is held in honor by all who believe in the cause of education.

Newberry College, at Newberry, is the property of the Lutherans. At Clinton stand the Presbyterian College of South Carolina and the Thornwell Orphanage School. Limestone College, at Gaffney, is a Baptist school. Lander College is located at Greenwood.

Leesville College, at Leesville, is open to both young men and women. Converse College, at Spartanburg, is a school for women.

Upon the old homestead of John C. Calhoun, at Fort Hill, stand the buildings of Clemson College, a great agricultural and mechanical school. Winthrop College for Women is located at Rockhill. A school for the deaf, dumb, and blind stands in Spartanburg County.

The colored people have public schools furnished to them by the white people of the state. The South Carolina Agricultural and Mechanical College for colored people located at Orangeburg is supported by the state. Benedict University, and Allen University, at Columbia, and Claflin University, at Orangeburg, are supported by northern people for the higher education of negroes.

Academies and high schools are found in nearly every town in the state. These are doing their part in the noble work of training the boys and girls of South Carolina to become wise and God-fearing men and women.

APPENDIX

GOVERNORS APPOINTED BY THE PROPRIETORS

1. Sir John Yeamans, appointed by Proprietors, 1664.
2. William Sayle, 1669.
3. Joseph West, appointed by Council, 1670.
4. Sir John Yeamans, appointed by Proprietors, 1672.
5. Joseph West, appointed by Proprietors, 1674.
6. Joseph Mor(e)ton, appointed by Proprietors, 1682.
7. Richard Kyrle, appointed by Proprietors, 1684.
8. Robert Quarry, appointed by Council, 1684.
9. Joseph West, appointed by Proprietors, 1685.
10. Joseph Mor(e)ton, appointed by Proprietors, 1685.
11. James Colleton, appointed by Proprietors, 1686.
12. Seth Sothell, a Proprietor, 1690.
13. Philip Ludwell, appointed by Proprietors, 1691.
14. Thomas Smith, appointed by Proprietors, 1693.
15. Joseph Blake, appointed by Council, 1694.
16. John Archdale, appointed by Proprietors, 1694.
17. Joseph Blake, appointed by Proprietors, 1696.
18. James Moore, appointed by Council, 1700.
19. Sir Nathaniel Johnson, appointed by Proprietors, 1702.
20. Col. Edward Tynte, appointed by Proprietors, 1708.
21. Robert Gibbes, appointed by Council, 1709.
22. Hon. Charles Craven, appointed by Proprietors, 1712.
23. Robert Daniel, appointed by Crown as Deputy, 1716.
24. Robert Johnson, appointed by Proprietors, 1717.
25. James Moore (son of 18), chosen by Convention of People.
Dec. 21, 1719.

GOVERNORS APPOINTED BY THE KING OF ENGLAND

1. James Moore, appointed by Convention of People, 1719-1721.
2. Sir Francis Nicholson, Provisional Governor, 1721-1729.
3. Arthur Middleton, President of Council during absence of Nicholson, 1724-1729.
4. Robert Johnson (same as 24 above), first Royal Governor, 1729-1735.
5. Thomas Broughton, Lieutenant-Governor but with full authority, 1735-1737.
6. William Bull, President of Council and Lieutenant-Governor, 1737-1743.
7. Samuel Horsey, appointed but did not hold office.
8. James Glen, 1743-1756.
9. William Henry Lyttleton, 1756-1760.
10. William Bull (son of 6), Lieutenant-Governor, 1759-1775.
11. Thomas Pownal, appointed Acting-Governor 1760-1761, but did not hold office.
12. Thomas Boone, 1761-1764.
13. William Bull, Acting-Governor, 1764-1766.
14. Lord Charles Greville Montagu, 1766-1768.
15. William Bull, Acting-Governor, 1768.
16. Lord Charles Greville Montagu, 1768-1769.
17. William Bull, Acting-Governor, 1769-1771.
18. Lord Charles Greville Montagu, 1771-1773.
19. William Bull, Acting-Governor, 1773-1775.
20. Lord William Campbell, 1775-1776.

PRESIDENTS AND GOVERNORS OF THE STATE

John Rutledge, President, March, 1776-March, 1778.
Rawlins Lowndes, President, March, 1778-January, 1779.
John Rutledge, Governor, January, 1779-January, 1782.
John Mathews, Governor, January, 1782-1783.
Benjamin Guerard, Governor, January, 1784-1785.
William Moultrie, Governor, January, 1786-1787.
Thomas Pinckney, Governor, January, 1788-1789.

Charles Pinckney, Governor, January, 1790-1791.
Arnoldus Vanderhorst, Governor, January, 1792-1793.
William Moultrie, Governor, January, 1794-1795.
Charles Pinckney, Governor, January, 1796-1797.
Edward Rutledge, Governor, January, 1798-1799.
John Drayton, Governor, January, 1800-1801.
James B. Richardson, Governor, January, 1802-1803.
Paul Hamilton, Governor, January, 1804-1805.
Charles Pinckney, Governor, January, 1806-1807.
John Drayton, Governor, January, 1808-1809.
Henry Middleton, Governor, January, 1810-1811.
Joseph Allston, Governor, January, 1812-1813.
David R. Williams, Governor, January, 1814-1815.
Andrew Pickens, Governor, January, 1816-1817.
John Geddes, Governor, January, 1818-1819.
Thomas Bennett, Governor, January, 1820-1821.
John Lyde Wilson, Governor, January, 1822-1823.
Richard I. Manning, Governor, January, 1824-1825.
John Taylor, Governor, January, 1826-1827.
Stephen D. Miller, Governor, January, 1828-1829.
James Hamilton, Jr., Governor, January, 1830-1831.
Robert Y. Hayne, Governor, January, 1832-1833.
George McDuffie, Governor, January, 1834-1835.
Pierce M. Butler, Governor, January, 1836-1837.
Patrick Noble, Governor, January, 1838-1839.
John P. Richardson, Governor, January, 1840-1841.
James H. Hammond, Governor, January, 1842-1843.
William Aiken, Governor, January, 1844-1845.
David Johnson, Governor, January, 1846-1847.
Whitemarsh B. Seabrook, Governor, January, 1848-1849.
John H. Means, Governor, January, 1850-1851.
John L. Manning, Governor, January, 1852-1853.
James H. Adams, Governor, January, 1854-1855.
Robert F. W. Allston, Governor, January, 1856-1857.
William H. Gist, Governor, January, 1858-1859.
Francis W. Pickens, Governor, January, 1860-1861.
Milledge L. Bonham, Governor, January, 1862-1864.
A. G. Magrath, Governor, 1865 (January-May).
Benjamin F. Perry, Governor, 1865 (June-November).

James L. Orr, Governor, November, 1865–July, 1868.
 Robert K. Scott, Governor, July, 1868–1872.
 Franklin J. Moses, Jr., Governor, January, 1873–1874.
 Daniel H. Chamberlain, Governor, January, 1875–1876.
 Wade Hampton, Governor, January, 1877–February, 1879.
 W. D. Simpson, Governor, February, 1879–September, 1880.
 T. B. Jeter, Governor, September, 1880–January, 1881.
 Johnson Hagood, Governor, January, 1881–1882.
 Hugh S. Thompson, January, 1883–July, 1886.
 John C. Sheppard, Governor, July, 1886–January, 1887.
 John P. Richardson, Governor, January, 1887–1890.
 Benjamin R. Tillman, Governor, January, 1891–1894.
 John Gary Evans, Governor, January, 1895–1896.
 William H. Ellerbe, Governor, January, 1897–1900.
 M. B. McSweeney, Governor, January, 1901–1902.
 Duncan Clinch Heyward, Governor, January, 1903–

NAMES OF COUNTIES, PARISHES, TOWNSHIPS, AND DISTRICTS

1685

Berkeley County.
 Craven County.
 Colleton County.
 Granville County (1721).

1706

St. Philip's Parish (Charles Town).
 Christ Church Parish, Berkeley.
 St. Thomas's Parish.
 St. John's Parish, Berkeley.
 St. James's Parish, Goose Creek.
 St. Andrew's Parish.
 St. George's Parish, Dorchester.
 St. Denis's Parish.
 St. Paul's Parish.
 St. Bartholomew's Parish.

St. Helena's Parish.
St. James's Parish, Santee.
Prince George's Parish, Winyah (1721).
Prince Frederick's Parish (1734).
St. John's Parish, Colleton (1734).
Prince William's Parish (1746).
St. Peter's Parish (1746).
St. Michael's Parish (1751).
St. Stephen's Parish (1754).
St. Mark's Parish (1757).
All Saints' Parish (1767).
St. Luke's Parish (1767).
St. Matthew's Parish (1768).
St. David's Parish (1768).
Orange Parish (1778).

1730

Purrysburg Township (Savannah River).
New Windsor Township (Savannah River).
Queenstown Township (Pee Dee River).
Fredericksburg Township (Wateree River).
Williamsburg Township (Black River).
Kingston Township (Waccamaw River).
Amelia Township (Santee River).
Saxe-Gotha Township (Congaree River).
Orangeburgh Township (Edisto River).

1769

Beaufort (Judicial) District.
Charles Town District.
Georgetown District.
Cheraws District.
Camden District.
Orangeburgh District.
Ninety Six District.
Pinckney District (1791).
Washington District (1791).

1785

Charleston County.
Washington County.
Colleton County.
Granville County.
Hilton County.
Lincoln County.
Shrewsbury County.
Bartholomew County.
Berkeley County.
Marion County.
Winyah County.
Williamsburg County.
Kingston County.
Liberty County.
Marlboro County.
Darlington County.
Chesterfield County.
Sumter County.
Clarendon County.
Lewisburg County.
Barnwell County.
Orangeburg County.
Lexington County.
Richland County.
Fairfield County.
Lancaster County.
Chester County.
York County.
Union County.
Newberry County.
Edgefield County.
Abbeville County.
Laurens County.
Spartanburg County.
Greenville County (1786).
Pendleton County (1789).
Kershaw County (1791).

1798

Charleston (Judicial) District.
Colleton District.
Beaufort District.
Barnwell or Winton District.
Georgetown District.
Orangeburgh District.
Sumter District.
Marion District.
Darlington District.
Marlboro District.
Chesterfield District.
Kershaw District.
Richland District.
Edgefield District.
Abbeville District.
Newberry District.
Fairfield District.
Lancaster District.
Chester District.
York District.
Spartanburg District.
Union District.
Laurens District.
Greenville District,
Pendleton District.

1868

Abbeville County, named after a town in France.
Aiken County, named after Governor William Aiken.
Anderson County, named after Colonel Robert Anderson of the Revolution.
Bamberg County, named after the Bamberg family.
Barnwell County, named after the Barnwell family.
Beaufort County, named after Henry, Duke of Beaufort, Lord Palatine of the province.

- Berkeley County, named after Sir William Berkeley and John, Lord Berkeley, two of the Proprietors.
- Charleston County, named after King Charles II.
- Cherokee County, named after the Cherokee Indians.
- Chester County, named after Chester in England.
- Chesterfield County, named after the English family of Chesterfield.
- Clarendon County, named after Edward, Earl of Clarendon, one of the Proprietors.
- Colleton County, named after Sir John Colleton, one of the Proprietors.
- Darlington County, origin of name unknown.
- Dorchester County, named after Dorchester, Massachusetts.
- Edgefield County, named, probably, from geographical position at the edge of the state near Georgia.
- Fairfield County, named, probably, from the natural beauty of this region.
- Florence County, named after the daughter of Gen. W. W. Harllee.
- Georgetown County, named after King George I. or King George II.
- Greenville County, named, probably, from the verdant beauty of the country.
- Greenwood County, named after the beauty of the region.
- Hampton County, named after Gen. Wade Hampton.
- Horry County, named after Gen. Peter Horry, of the Revolution.
- Kershaw County, named after Col. Joseph Kershaw, who settled Camden (Pine Tree Hill) in 1758.
- Lancaster County, named after Lancaster, England.
- Laurens County, named after Henry Laurens and Col. John Laurens.
- Lee County, named after Gen. Robert E. Lee.
- Lexington County, named after Lexington Massachusetts.
- Marion County, named after Gen. Francis Marion.
- Marlboro County, named after the English Marlborough family.
- Newberry County, origin of name unknown.
- Oconee County, named after the Oconee Indians.
- Orangeburg County, named after the fourth Prince of Orange, who married Anne, daughter of King George II.
- Pickens County, named after Gen. Andrew Pickens.
- Richland County, named, probably, after a plantation of the same name owned by the Taylor family.
- Saluda County, named after Saluda Indians.

Sumter County, named after Gen. Thomas Sumter.

Spartanburg County. This territory was called the "Spartan" country in very early times.

Union County, named after Union Church which stands in this region.

Williamsburg County, named after Prince William, son of King George II.

York County, named after York, England.

GENERAL CONFEDERATE OFFICERS AND OFFICIALS FROM SOUTH CAROLINA

Lieutenant Generals

Richard H. Anderson, Army of Northern Virginia (1864).

Stephen D. Lee, Army of Tennessee (1864).

Wade Hampton, Army of Northern Virginia (1864).

James Longstreet (appointed from Alabama), Army of Northern Virginia (1862).

Daniel H. Hill (appointed from North Carolina), Army of Northern Virginia (1863).

Major Generals

Benjamin Huger, Army of Northern Virginia (1861).

Joseph B. Kershaw, Army of Northern Virginia (1864).

M. C. Butler, Army of Northern Virginia (1864).

M. W. Gary, Army of Northern Virginia (appointed, but commission not made out, 1865).

P. M. B. Young (appointed from Georgia), Army of Northern Virginia (1864).

E. M. Law (appointed from Alabama), Army of Northern Virginia (1865).

Brigadier Generals

Barnard E. Bee (1861).

Hamilton P. Bee (appointed from Texas, 1862).

Pinckney D. Bowles (appointed from Alabama, 1865).

M. L. Bonham (1861).

John Bratton (1864).

James Cantey (appointed from Alabama, 1864).
Ellison Capers (1865).
James Chesnut (1863).
James Conner (1864).
Zachariah C. Deas (appointed from Alabama, 1862).
Thomas F. Drayton (1861).
John Dunnivant (1864).
Stephen Elliott, Jr. (1864).
N. G. Evans (1861).
S. W. Ferguson (appointed from Mississippi, 1863).
S. R. Gist (1862).
A. H. Gladden (appointed from Louisiana, 1861).
D. C. Govan (appointed from Arkansas, 1864).
Maxey Gregg (1861).
Johnson Hagood (1862).
Micah Jenkins (1862).
John D. Kennedy (1864).
A. R. Lawton (appointed from Georgia, 1861)
T. M. Logan (1865).
A. M. Manigault (1863).
Samuel McGowan (1863).
Abner Perrin (1863).
J. Johnston Pettigrew (1862).
John S. Preston (1861).
R. S. Ripley (1861).
L. S. Ross (appointed from Texas, 1864).
R. R. Ross (appointed from Tennessee).
C. H. Stevens (1864).
J. H. Trapier (1861).
J. B. Villepigue (1862).
W. H. Wallace (1864).
L. T. Wigfall (appointed from Texas, 1861).

In the Cabinet of President Davis

Christopher G. Memminger, first Secretary of Treasury.
G. A. Trenholm, second Secretary of Treasury.
Lewis Cruger, Comptroller and Solicitor.

Members of Military Staff of President Davis

James Chesnut, A. D. C.

F. R. Lubbock (appointed from Texas).

John M. Huger.

War Department

A. C. Myers, first quartermaster-general.

A. R. Lawton, second quartermaster-general.

Lucius B. Northrop, first commissary-general.

T. S. Rhett, bureau of ordnance.

Samuel P. Moore, surgeon-general.

John S. Preston, bureau of conscription.

**SOUTH CAROLINA ARTILLERY IN THE WAR BETWEEN
THE STATES****Light Batteries**

Bachman's German Battery.

Beaufort Battery.

Brooks (Rhett-Fickling) Battery.

Calhoun-Preston (Sumter) Battery.

Chesterfield Battery.

Ferguson's Battery.

Garden's (Palmetto) Battery.

Gist Guard (Chichester) Battery.

Johnson's (Richard) Battery.

Lafayette Battery.

Macbeth (Boyce) Battery.

McIntosh's (Pee Dee) Battery.

Marion Battery.

Mathewes Battery.

Santee Battery.

Tupper's Battery.

Vigilant Rifles Battery.

Waccamaw (Ward) Battery.

Washington Battery (Hart's Horse Artillery with Hampton's Cavalry).

Winder's Battery.

Light Battalions

German Battalion, Batteries A and B.

Lamar's Battalion.

Palmetto Battalion, Batteries A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K.

Heavy Battalions

First, Fifteenth (Lucas), Eighteenth (Alston).

Heavy Regiments

First, First State Militia, Second, Third.

AN ORDINANCE

To dissolve the union between the State of South Carolina and other states united with her under the compact entitled, "The Constitution of the United States of America."

We, the people of the State of South Carolina, in convention assembled, do declare and ordain, and it is hereby declared and ordained,

That the ordinance adopted by us in convention, on the twenty-third day of May, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-eight, whereby the Constitution of the United States of America was ratified, and also all acts, and parts of acts, of the General Assembly of this state, ratifying amendments of the said Constitution, are hereby repealed; and that the union now subsisting between South Carolina and other states, under the name of "the United States of America" is hereby dissolved.

Yeas, 169; nays, none.

Done at Charleston, the twentieth day of December, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and sixty.

D. F. JAMISON,

Delegate from Barnwell and President of the Convention.

SIGNED ALSO BY ALL OF THE OTHER
MEMBERS OF THE CONVENTION.

INDEX

- Abbeville, 182, 192, 193, 239.
Abbeville County, 64, 65, 106,
174, 180, 184.
District, 188.
Abney, Lieutenant, 208.
Academies, 305.
African Laborers, 22, 69, 201,
217.
Agricultural and Mechanical
College, 305.
Alabama, 214, 220.
Albemarle, Duke of, 5.
Albemarle Point, 8.
Aldrich, A. P., 291.
Allen University, 305.
Anderson, R. H., 221, 250, 251.
Anderson County, 107, 291.
Appalachian Indians, 29.
Appomattox, 253, 256.
Archdale, John, 23, 24, 27.
Ardesoif, Captain, 128.
Arkansas, 223.
Artillery, Charleston Company
of, 74.
First Regiment, 226.
Ashepool, 12.
Ashley, Lord, 4.
Ashley River, 5, 6, 8, 11-14, 25,
35, 92, 117.
Assembly, 90, 156.
Attakulla-kulla, 59, 61.
Augusta, 118, 150, 179, 287.
Bachman, J. B., 302.
Back River, 20.
Ball's Bluff, 255.
Baptist Church, 25, 219.
Baptist Schools, 304.
Barbadoes, 8, 11, 17, 21, 40.
Barnwell District, 279.
Barnwell, John, 33.
Baron, 6.
Battalion, Rion's, 280.
Batteries, 266.
Battery (Charleston), 286.
Battery Gregg, 227.
Wagner, 227, 228, 279.
Baxter, John, 134, 157.
Beard, Jonas, 95.
Beaufort, 2, 35, 69.
Beaufort District, 136.
Beauregard, General, 220, 225.
Bee, Thomas, 86.
Belmont, 57.
Benedict University, 305.
Berkeley County, 5, 17, 127.
Berkeley, John, Lord, 5.
Sir William, 5.
Bermuda, 8.
Bermuda Hundred, 280.
Black, J. L., 269.
Blackbeard, 39, 40.
Black Mingo Creek, 132.
Black River, 50, 132.
Blackstock, 143.

- Blake, Joseph, 22-25, 27.
 Blakewey, William, 45.
 Blanding, J. D., 208, 226.
 Bloody Angle, The, 243.
 Bonnet, Stede, 40-43.
 Boone, Joseph, 75.
 Bonham, Milledge L., 224-231, 244.
 Boston, 87.
 Brandon, Thomas, 124, 137.
 Brandy Station, 270.
 Bratton, John, 253.
 William, 122, 124, 142, 150.
 Mrs. William, 124.
 Brewton, Miles, 70, 86.
 British Merchants, 82.
 Parliament, 76, 77, 81, 93, 109, 110.
 Soldiers, 96, 98, 99, 104, 105, 112, 117, 118, 195.
 War Ships, 155.
 Britton's Neck, 129.
 Broad Path, 27.
 Broad River (Port Royal), 2.
 Broad River (Upper Country), 12, 52, 65, 124, 137, 142, 145, 147, 172.
 Broughton, Thomas, 53.
 Brown, Gasper, 95.
 J. N., 243.
 Buford's Regiment, 118.
 Bull, William, 50, 54, 57.
 William (son of above), 60, 61, 68, 72.
 Bunker Hill, 87.
 Burgess's Mill, 277.
 Burnside, General, 268, 269.
 Bush, Lieutenant, 114.
 Butler, B. F., 280.
 Butler, M. C., 266, 271, 274, 275, 277, 279.
 Pickens, 180.
 Pierce, 158.
 Pierce M., 206-208.
 Caldwell, John, 67, 103.
 Martha, 188.
 Calhoun, Catharine, 63, 189.
 James, 179.
 John Caldwell, 62, 67, 103, 171-174, 176, 180, 186, 188-205, 216, 217, 305.
 Patrick, 62-67, 105, 155, 157, 188, 189.
 William, 179.
 Camden, 118, 125-127, 130, 135, 136, 150, 151, 153, 165, 172, 244.
 Camden Ferry, 125.
 Camp Gregg, 240.
 Campbell, William, 141.
 Lord William, 88.
 Cantey, Adj. James, 208.
 Cape Fear River, 41.
 Capers, Ellison (Bishop), 259-261.
 Cardross, Lord, 18.
 Carlisle, James W., 302.
 Carolina, 3, 4, 5.
 Carolina, North, 5, 33, 38, 223, 231.
 South, settled, 2; named, 19; made a state, 154; joins the Confederacy, 220.
 Carolina, The, 8, 10.
 Carpenter, Captain, 252.
 Carpetbaggers, 292.
 Carteret, Sir George, 5.

- Cassique, 6.
Catawba Indians, 12, 65.
 River, 124, 125, 137, 139, 145,
 151.
Cattle, 21, 22, 69, 299.
Cedar Spring, 124.
Chamberlain, D. H., 293.
Chambersburg, 268.
Chancellorsville, 240.
Chapultepec, 208, 209.
Charles I, 4.
Charles II, 4, 5.
Charles IX, 2, 4.
Charleston, 5, 8, 15, 157, 169,
 178, 185, 189, 212, 219,
 220, 227-231, 233, 239, 244,
 255, 263, 282, 284, 286.
Charleston Harbor, 223.
Charles Town, 8, 11-17, 19, 20,
 24, 25, 32, 37, 69, 70, 72, 87,
 88, 96, 101, 105, 112, 115,
 117, 130, 137 ; (name
 changed to Charleston,
 157, 158.)
Charlotte, 140.
Charter, 5.
Cherokees, 12, 47, 59-61, 74,
 97, 101, 106-108, 127, 144,
 157.
Cherokee County, 147.
Cherry Hill, 184.
Chesapeake, The, 193.
Chester County, 139, 142.
Cheves, Alexander, 174.
 Langdon, 171, 174-178, 185,
 195.
 Sophia Langdon, 178.
Chickamauga, 248, 258.
Chicken, Captain, 37.
Chicora College, 304.
Church Street (Charleston),
 25.
Churubusco, 207, 208.
Citadel (Military Academy), 279,
 302.
City of Mexico, 208, 209.
Claflin University, 305.
Clarendon County, 5, 135, 136.
Clarendon, Earl of, 5.
Clariosophic Society, 181.
Clark, T. H., 270.
Clarke, Elijah, 137, 138, 143.
Clay, Henry, 172, 174, 183, 195,
 202, 204.
Clay's Compromise Tariff, 184.
Clem's Creek, 122.
Clemson College, 199, 305.
Clinton, 304.
Clinton, Henry, 96, 98, 104-106,
 117, 118.
Cobb Legion, 266.
Cold Harbor, 274.
Colhoun, Floride, 193, 194.
College, Plan to establish, 72.
 for Women, 302.
 of Charleston, 301.
Colleton, James, 19.
 Sir John, 5.
Colleton County, 5, 17, 169.
 District, 185.
Columbia, 152, 163, 171, 172,
 178, 180, 183, 206, 211, 231,
 262, 263, 278, 286, 288, 291,
 295, 305.
Columbia Theological Seminary,
 302.
Combahee River, 12, 13, 35, 36.
Commons' House, 53.

- Confederate Congress, 244.
 States of America, 220, 223.
 Veterans, 298.
 Congaree River, 12, 52, 101, 163.
 Congregationalists, 25.
 Congress, Continental, 83, 84, 89,
 100, 109, 115.
 Provincial, 84-86, 89, 90, 93,
 120.
 Stamp Act, 77.
 Connelly, Henry, 211.
 Conner, James, 244.
 Constitution (South Carolina),
 90.
 (United States), 159.
 Convention (Philadelphia, 1787),
 158, 159.
 (Charleston, 1788), 159, 160.
 Converse College, 305.
 Conyers, Daniel, 134.
 Cooper, Anthony Ashley, 4, 5, 6.
 Cooper River, 5, 6, 15, 19, 24,
 27, 30, 37, 57, 117, 172.
 Coosaw, 12, 35.
 Coosawhatchie Swamp, 136.
 Cornwallis, Lord, 111, 116, 117,
 125, 127, 131, 133, 137, 141,
 142, 144, 153.
 Cotton, 56, 298.
 Mills, 299, 300.
 Council, 15, 59.
 Council of Safety, 86, 88, 89, 108.
 Cowpens, 145, 147-149.
 Craven, Charles, 33-39.
 Craven County, 17.
 Craven, Earl of, 5.
 Creeks, 12, 59, 60.
 Crum, Henry, 95.
 Cumming, Sir Alexander, 47, 48.
 Cuninghame, "Bloody Bill,"
 103.
 Colonel (Georgia), 147.
 Cuninghame family, 103, 105.
 Daniell, Robert, 20, 29.
 Darlington County, 51.
 Davie, William R., 125, 140, 142.
 Davis Legion, 266.
 Davis, Jefferson, 220.
Defence, The, 88, 89, 93.
 Deer, 2, 9, 13, 20, 49.
 Delaware Bay, 41.
 De Saussure, H. W., 175, 192.
 Dickinson, Colonel, 208.
 Dissenters, 17.
 Dorchester, 25.
 Doyle, Colonel (British), 136.
 Drayton, William Henry, 84-
 87, 92-95, 103, 154.
 Drayton Hall, 92.
 Drewry's Bluff, 280.
 Dreher, Godfrey, 95.
 Due West, 106.
 Due West Female College, 304.
 Theological Seminary, 304.
 Dumfries, 269.
 Dunlap (British officer), 124.
 Dutch, 11, 111.
 Dwight, President, 191.
 East Battery (Charleston), 57.
 East Bay (Charleston), 57.
 Edgefield, 182, 216.
 Edgefield County, 206.
 District, 224.
 Edisto River, 12, 14, 17, 19, 25,
 35, 38, 62, 136, 156, 284.
 Edwards, Colonel, 240.

- Eldorado, 168.
Eleventh (S. C.) Regiment, 280.
Elliott, Barnard, 96.
 Benjamin, 86.
 Mrs. Barnard, 114.
 Stephen, 228, 229, 255, 256.
 Thomas, 134.
England, 3-5, 11, 17, 21, 94,
 165-168, 193-195.
English Church, 16.
 Settlers, 4, 8-10, 11, 17.
Enoree River, 137, 138.
Episcopal Church, 16, 33, 259.
Erskine College, 304.
Euphradian Society, 181.
Europe, 215.
Eutaw Springs, 153.
Evans, Nathan G., 254-256.

Fair Forest Creek, 124.
Fayetteville, 279.
Felder, Henry, 95.
Ferguson, Major (British officer),
 141, 142.
 Thomas, 86.
Fishdam Ford, 142.
Fishing Creek, 122, 126, 137.
Fitzpatrick, Garrit, 95.
Five Nations, 35.
Flag of South Carolina, 88, 98-
 100, 114, 115.
Flax, 57.
Fletcher, Thomas, 103.
Florida, 3, 5, 8, 10, 19, 27-29,
 35, 166, 206, 220, 224,
 287.
Force Bill, 198.
Fork Country, 52, 103.
Forts, 10, 27, 31, 60.

Fort Balfour, 136.
 Charles, 2, 3.
 Hill, 199, 305.
 Johnson, 31, 58, 88, 89.
 Loudon, 60.
 Moore, 60.
 Moultrie, 96-98, 100, 104,
 117, 127, 155, 227.
 Prince George, 60.
 Rutledge, 107.
 Sumter, 220-223, 225-231,
 239, 255, 285.
 Watson, 151.
Fox (horse), 135.
France, 1; 2, 19, 167.
Franklin, 259, 260.
Fredericksburg, 237, 240, 246,
 268.
French Soldiers, 28, 31, 32, 109,
 113, 116.
 Settlers, 2, 3.
 -Swiss, 51.
Furman, J. C., 302.
 University, 304.

Gadsden, Christopher, 73-79, 81,
 84, 96, 118, 157.
Gaffney, 305.
Gaillard, Theodore, 176.
Gaines's Mill, 233, 234.
Gaine, Major, 130, 134.
"Gamecock" (Sumter), 133, 137,
 144.
Gary, M. W., 277.
Gates, Horatio, 126, 127, 130.
George I, 94.
George II, 48, 49.
George III, 57, 76, 78, 92, 94,
 138.

- Georgia, 5, 39, 49, 112, 137, 142,
 220, 231, 259.
 Georgetown, 50, 69, 128, 134,
 136, 161, 162.
 Germans, 51, 52, 65, 95, 101,
 103, 121.
 German-Swiss, 51.
 Gervais, 157.
 Gerry, Elbridge, 167.
 Gettysburg, 241, 247, 248, 271.
 Gibbes, William, 85.
 Giles, Hugh, 128.
 Ginger, 56.
 Gist, States Rights, 258-261.
 Gist's Brigade, 258-261.
 Glen, James, 58-60.
 Goldsboro, 281.
 Goose Creek, 19, 24.
 Granby, 152.
 Grant (British officer), 60.
 Grant, Ulysses S., 242, 244, 249,
 250, 252, 255, 256, 258, 274,
 281.
 Great Cane Brake, 103.
 Greene, Nathanael, 149, 153.
 Greenville, 103, 304.
 Female College, 304.
 Greenville County, 107.
 Greenwood, 305.
 Gregg, James, 231, 232.
 Maxey, 231-238.
 Grey, Lieutenant, 114.
 Grier, W. M., 302.
 Grinké, J. F., 176.
 Thomas, 176.
 Guilford Court House, 149.
 Hagood, Johnson, 279-281.
 Halfway Swamp, 135.
 Hamburg, 60.
 Hamilton, D. H., 238.
 James, Jr., 183, 198, 202.
 Hammond, Samuel, 137, 157.
 Hampton, Andrew, 124.
 Anthony, 65, 106.
 Edward, 124.
 Henry, 143, 150, 157.
 Preston, 269, 271, 277.
 Wade (First), 150-153, 157,
 261.
 Wade (Second), 261-263.
 Wade (Third), 185, 250, 263-
 279, 293-297.
 Hampton Legion, 265, 266.
 Hancock, John, 109.
 Hanging Rock, 125.
 Creek, 210.
 Hard Labor Creek, 65.
 Harden, William, 136, 137,
 157.
 Harlee, Captain, 245.
 Harper, William, 184.
 Harper's Ferry, 237, 245, 246.
 Hart, J. F., 265, 266.
 Haskell, A. C., 277.
 Charles Thomson, 178.
 John C., 256.
 Hawes's Shop, 274.
 Hayne, Isaac, 137.
 P. H., 284, 286-288.
 Robert Yonge, 185-188, 286.
 Heatley, William, 95.
 Hemp, 57.
 Henegan, Colonel, 245.
 Heyward, Thomas, Jr., 86-89,
 100, 157.
 Highlanders, 51.
 Hill, A. P., 240.

- Hill, William, 141, 142, 143, 150, 157.
 Hobkirk's Hill, 153.
 Holland, 116.
 Hood, J. B., 259.
 "Hornet's Nest," 141.
 Horry, Daniel, 162.
 Hugh, 130, 134, 157.
 Peter, 134, 135, 157.
 Horseshoe Plantation, 169.
 Houses, 8, 25, 35, 51, 57, 70, 73.
 Huck, Christian, 122-124.
 Huger, Isaac, 60, 96.
 John, 86.
 Huguenin, Thomas A., 230.
 Huguenot Church, 19, 25.
 Huguenots, 1-4, 16, 19, 24, 25, 65, 70, 101, 127, 128.
 Independence of South Carolina, 89-92, 94.
 Independence, Declaration of, at Philadelphia, 100.
 Indians, 2, 12-14, 20, 21, 27, 29, 38, 44.
 Land bought from, 14, 49, 60.
 Indigo, 56, 69.
 Inglis, Chancellor, 219.
 Ireland, 17.
 Iroquois, 35.
 Isle of Palms, 104.
 Jackson, Andrew, 183, 261, 262.
 Stonewall, 235, 237, 240, 245, 266.
 Jacksonborough, 156.
 Jamaica, 29.
 James, James, 51.
 John, 128, 130, 131.
 James Island, 222, 279.
 James River, 235, 275, 280.
 Jamison, D. F., 219.
 Jasper, Sergeant, 99, 100, 114.
 Jefferson, Thomas, 100.
 Jenkins, Micah, 249, 250-253.
 Johnson, Andrew, 290.
 Nathaniel, 30-32.
 Robert, 39, 41, 43, 45, 47, 49, 50.
 William, 80-82.
 Johnston, J. E., 250, 259, 261, 278, 279, 281, 290.
 Kautz's Cavalry, 276.
 Kennedy, J. D., 249, 250.
Keokuk, The, 227.
 Keowee, 47, 60.
 Kershaw, Ely, 103, 157.
 Joseph B., 224, 244-250.
 Kettle Creek, 144.
 Kiawahs, 9.
 Kilpatrick's Cavalry, 279.
 King, George, 95.
 "King's Men," 105.
 King's Mountain, 141, 142.
 King's Tree, 50.
 Kingstree, 130.
 Kussoes, 13.
 Lacey, Edward, 122, 123, 139, 141-143, 150, 157.
 Lancaster, 210, 211, 213.
 Lancaster County, 64, 125.
 District, 210.
 Lander College, 305.
 Landgrave, 6, 20.

- Langdon, Mary, 174.
 Laurens, Henry, 60, 86, 91, 108,
 109-112, 158.
 John, 108, 112-117.
 Laurens County, 137, 140, 239.
 Laws, 5, 7, 18.
 Lawyers, 72.
 "Leaning Wood" (Indian), 59.
 LeConte, Joseph, 219.
 Lee, "Light-Horse Harry," 151,
 152.
 Robert E., 233, 238, 242, 244-
 246, 249, 252-256, 266-
 271, 272, 274, 277, 290.
 Leesville, 305.
 Leesville College, 305.
 Legaré, Hugh S., 180, 184, 284.
 Leitner, Michael, 95.
 Lemon Island, 2.
Leopard, The, 193.
 Lexington, 87.
 "Liberty" Flag, 88, 98, 100,
 209, 226.
 "Liberty Tree," 80-83, 97, 108.
 Library, 71.
 Society, 71.
 Lichfield, Conn., 192.
 Limestone College, 305.
 Lincoln, Abraham, 217, 221, 223,
 270.
 Lincoln (Massachusetts officer),
 117, 118, 156.
 Lindo, Moses, 56.
 Little Round Top, 247.
 Little Wood River, 35.
 Locke, John, 5.
 Logan, George, 45.
 London, 8, 71, 92, 108, 111, 112.
 Tower of, 111.
London, The, 82.
 Long Canes Creek, 64
 Settlement, 63-65.
 Long Island, 104.
 Longstreet, General, 249, 252,
 253.
 Lords Proprietors, 4-7
 Louis XVI, 116.
 Louisiana, 220.
 Lowndes, Rawlins, 79, 86, 133,
 169.
 William, 169-174, 195.
 Lucas, Elizabeth, 54, 55, 154,
 162-164.
 George, 54.
 Ludwell, Philip, 19.
 Lutheran College, 304.
 Lutheran Seminary, 302.
 Lynch, Thomas, 77, 79, 84,
 100.
 Thomas, Jr., 100.
 Lynch's Creek, 132, 136.
 Macdonald, 134, 135.
 Madison, James, 262.
 Magnolia Cemetery, 178, 289.
 Magrath, A. G., 290.
 Maham, Hezekiah, 134, 151.
 Manassas, 224, 235-237, 239,
 244, 250, 252, 255, 265.
 Manigault, Arthur, 257-261.
 Gabriel, 70.
 Manigault's Brigade, 257-261.
 Marion, Francis, 60, 126-136,
 142, 151-153, 157.
 Marion County, 231.
 District, 254.
 Maryland, 126, 130.
 Maryland Heights, 245.

- Marshall, John (Chief Justice), 167.
 William, 175.
 Mason, Senator, 202.
 Massachusetts, 25.
 Maxey, Cornelia, 231.
 Jonathan, 231.
 Mazyck, Isaac, 70.
 Mazyck's Pasture Lot, 80.
 McCall, James, 137, 142, 143, 148.
 McCauley, James, 134.
 McClellan, General, 233, 235, 245, 268.
 McClure, John, 122, 123.
 Mary, 122.
 McConnell, John, 122.
 Samuel, 123.
 McCord Family, 51.
 McCottry, William, 134.
 McDaniel, Sergeant, 100.
 McDonald, Sergeant, 114, 115.
 McDowell (North Carolina officer), 141, 147.
 McDuffie, George, 179-185, 198.
 McGowan, Samuel, 239-244.
 McMaster, F. W., 256.
 McWilliams, John, 95.
 Meeting Street (Charleston), 25.
 Meighan, John, 268.
 Merchants, 70, 71.
 Methodists, 304.
 Mexican War, 206, 232, 244.
 Mexico, 206, 224, 239.
 Middleton, Arthur (President of Council), 46, 84.
 Arthur (grandson of above), 84-87, 93, 100, 118.
 Henry, 84.
 Middleton, Thomas, 60.
 Military Academy, South Carolina, 279, 302.
 Military District, No. 2, 291.
 Millwood, 263, 278.
 Mississippi, 220, 258.
 Mississippi River, 166.
 Valley, 224, 257.
 Missouri, 173.
 Mitchell, John C., 230.
 Monck's Corner, 135.
 Monmouth, 112.
 Monocacy River, 267.
 Monroe, President, 196.
 Montagu, Lord Charles Greville, 68, 81.
 Montgomery, 214, 220.
 Moore, James, 27, 29.
 James (son of above), 34, 35, 44-46.
 Morgan, Daniel, 145, 147.
 Morris Island, 227, 228.
 Morton, Joseph, 17, 19.
 Morton Settlement, 17.
 Moses, F. J., Jr., 293.
 Motte, Colonel, 88.
 Rebecca, 152.
 Moultrie, John, 97.
 William, 60, 88, 96-98, 113, 157, 159, 163, 172.
 Mount Meigs, 213.
 Pleasant, 302.
 Mullally, Francis P., 242.
 Murfreesboro, 257.
 Musgrove's Mills, 137, 138.
 Napoleon III, 215.
 Nashville, 261.
 Neel, Andrew, 122

- Negro Government, 292, 293.
 Negroes, 11, 22, 49, 55, 57, 261.
 Nelson's Ferry, 130, 133.
 Neuse River, 33.
 New Bordeaux, 65.
 New England, 39, 40, 87, 122.
 New Jersey, 122.
 New Orleans, 262.
 New Rochelle, 65.
 New York, 11, 35, 40, 105, 122,
 215, 223.
 Newport, 112, 193.
 Nicholson, Francis, 46.
 Nineteenth Regiment, 257, 258.
 Ninety-Six, 105, 106, 118.
 Noble, Patrick, 180.
 Non-Importation Agreement, 82.
 North Carolina, 44, 107, 126, 127,
 141, 142, 255.
 Oconee County, 107, 216.
 Indians, 12.
 Ogier, Lewis, 134.
 Oglethorpe, James, 49, 50.
 "Old Hickory," 261.
 Olympia Cotton-Mill, 300.
 O'Neill, John Belton, 184.
 Orange Quarter, 19.
 Orangeburg, 95, 151, 305.
 Orangeburgh County, 51, 52,
 101.
 Ordinance of Nullification, 183.
 Orr, J. L., 291.
 Oxford University, 92, 154, 164.
 Pacolet River, 147.
 Palmetto Regiment, 206-209,
 239.
 Sharpshooters, 250, 251.
 Pamunkey River, 274.
 Parker, Admiral, 96, 98, 99,
 104-106.
 Parliament (see British).
 Parishes, 33.
 Parris Island, 2.
 Parsons, James, 86.
 Pee Dee River, 51, 62, 127, 129,
 130, 132, 133.
 Pendleton, 181.
 Perrin, Abner, 240, 241.
 Perry, B. F., 290.
 Petersburg, 250, 255, 275, 280.
 Petigru, James L., 180, 184, 288.
 Philadelphia, 83, 84, 89, 100, 212.
 Pickens, Andrew, 60, 105, 144,
 145, 148, 149, 152, 153, 156,
 216.
 Andrew, 2d, 216.
 Francis W., 216, 220, 238.
 Pickens County, 47.
 Pinckney, Charles, 158.
 Charles (Chief Justice), 52, 53,
 56, 58, 86, 154, 155, 162, 164.
 Charles Cotesworth, 58, 85,
 92, 118, 154-159, 163, 167,
 168, 175.
 Thomas (emigrant), 52.
 Thomas (son of Chief Justice),
 58, 92, 154, 157-168, 175.
 Pirates, 39-44.
 Pitch, 49.
 Pitt, William, 79.
 Planters, 71.
 Pocotaligo River, 35-37, 136.
 Poets, 282-289.
 Pope, General, 235-237.
 Port Royal, 1-4, 8, 18, 19, 28,
 35-49.

- Postell, James, 134, 135, 157.
 John, 134, 135.
 Potomac, 237, 268, 269.
 Presbyterian College, 305.
 Presbyterians, 302, 304.
 Associate Reformed, 304.
 President, First, 89.
 Pressley, Colonel, 258.
 Preston, W. C., 184, 302.
 Prévost, General, 112, 113.
 Prioleau, Elias, 19.
 Province, 46.
 Proprietors, 4-8, 17, 18, 20, 22,
 31, 44, 45.
 Purry, John Peter, 51.
 Purrysburgh, 51.

 Quaker, 23.
 Queen Anne's War, 27.
 Quimby Bridge, 152.

 Rappahannock River, 235, 268,
 270.
 Rawdon, Lord, 135, 149, 151,
 153.
 Rangers, 101.
 Reams's Station, 277.
Revenge, The, 40.
 Revolution (1719), 44-46.
 (1775), 54, 58, 68, 78, 105,
 106, 112.
 Reedy River, 103.
 Rhett, Alfred, 226.
 William, 32, 41-43.
 Ribault, Jean, 2, 3.
 Rice, 20, 22, 49, 56, 69, 299.
 Richardson, J. S., 176.
 Richmond, 223, 224, 233, 245,
 251, 255, 266, 272.
 Rickenbaker, Henry, 95.
 Rion's Battalion, 280.
 Ripley, R. S., 231.
 Roberts, Owen, 96.
 Rockhill, 305.
 Rocky River, 174.
Royal James, The, 41, 42.
 "Rule of the Robbers," 292.
 Russell family, 51.
 Russia, 216.
 Rutledge, Andrew, 70.
 Edward, 84, 89, 100, 157,
 159.
 Hugh, 89, 175.
 John, 89.
 John (son of above), 77, 79,
 84, 89, 91, 100, 133, 134,
 141, 142, 156, 157, 159.
 Saluda River, 12, 52, 63, 103,
 105, 118, 124, 145, 151.
 Samaria Church, 275.
 Santee Canal, 172.
 River, 12, 19, 24, 25, 49, 62,
 127, 133, 135, 136, 151, 153,
 162, 193.
 Sappony Church, 275.
 Savannah, 50, 112, 113, 163,
 165.
 Savannah River, 12, 35, 39, 49,
 51, 60, 62, 112, 144, 150,
 178, 179, 184.
 Sayle, William, 8, 10, 11.
 Schools, 71, 300-305; of Eng-
 land, 72; for colored people,
 305; for deaf, dumb, and
 blind, 305.
 School builders, 302.
 Scotch-Irish, 50, 51, 62.

- Scots, 18, 19, 50, 62, 65, 66, 68,
 95, 101, 103, 105, 118, 119,
 121, 128, 144.
 Scott, R. K., 293.
 Winfield, 206, 209.
 Secession Convention, 218, 219,
 244.
 Seminole Indians, 206, 224,
 287.
 Seneca, 106.
 Settlers, 2, 3, 5, 22, 25, 49-52.
 Seven Days' Battles, 266.
 Seven Pines, 251, 265.
 Shaftesbury, Earl of, 6.
 Sharpsburg, 237, 246, 255, 267.
 Shelby, Isaac, 137, 138, 141.
 Sheridan, Philip, 250, 257, 258,
 274, 275.
 Sherman, W. T., 231, 250, 259,
 277-279, 288.
 Shields, General, 207, 208.
 Shipyards, 70.
 Silk, 30, 49, 57.
 Silk Hope, 30.
 Silkworms, 30.
 Simkins, Eldred, 182.
 Simms, W. Gilmore, 282-286,
 288.
 Sims, J. Marion, 210-215.
 Theresa, 214.
 Singleton, Richard, 185.
 Skene, Alexander, 45.
 Slaves, 11, 22, 49, 55, 69, 172,
 261.
 Sloan, J. B. E., 255.
 Smith, Benjamin, 70.
 Thomas, 20, 23.
 William, 125.
 Snell, Adam, 95.
 Snow Island, 132, 135, 136.
 South Carolina (see Carolina):
 Cavalry, Fifth, 274; First,
 269; Fourth, 273; Second,
 268; Seventh, 277; Sixth,
 274; *Gazette*, 71; Map of,
 103; Volunteers, First, 233,
 Twelfth, 233, Thirteenth,
 233; Fourteenth, 233; Orr's
 Rifle, 233.
 South Carolina College, 168, 180,
 211, 216, 224, 231, 232, 239,
 263.
 Spain, 166, 167.
 Spaniards, 3, 8, 10, 19, 27, 28,
 31, 35, 39, 44.
 Spartanburg, 304, 305.
 Spartanburg County, 65, 124,
 125, 140.
 Spottsylvania, 253.
 St. Andrew's Hall, 219.
 St. Augustine, 3, 28, 29, 157.
 St. Cecilia Association, 71.
 St. John's Parish, 127.
 River, 3.
 St. Michael's Church, 16, 25.
 St. Philip's Church, 25, 205.
 Stallion's, 124.
 Stamp Act, 76-79.
 Stamp Act Congress, 77.
 State House, 183.
 Stevens, Colonel, 259.
 Stone Bridge, 224, 255, 265.
 "Stonewall" Jackson, 266, 287.
 Stoney, J. D., 281.
 Stono River, 12, 36, 55.
 Strother, Sergeant, 245.
 Stuart, J. E. B., 266, 268, 270,
 272.

- Sullivan's Island, 31, 96, 98,
 103, 104, 106, 107, 120, 155,
 227.
 Summerville, 25.
 Sumter, Lieutenant, 208.
 Thomas, 96, 119-121, 124,
 125, 133, 134, 137, 139,
 141-144, 150-153, 157, 159.
 "Swamp Fox," 133.
 Swiss, 51.

 Tar, 49, 69.
 Tar River, 35.
 Tarcote, 132.
 Tariff, High, 183.
 Tarleton, Banastre, 118-120,
 126, 127, 133, 142, 143,
 147-149.
 Taylor, Thomas, 125, 142, 143,
 157.
 Tea Tax, 82, 83.
 Tennent, William, 103.
 Tennessee, 223, 257-259.
 Tenth Regiment, 257, 258.
 Texas, 184, 220, 254.
 Thicketty Fort, 125.
 Thomas, John, 124, 157.
 Thomson, William, 96, 98, 101,
 103, 104, 120, 157, 178.
 Thornwell, James H., 211, 302.
 Thornwell Orphanage School,
 305.
 Timrod, Henry, 284, 287-289.
 Tories, 103, 105, 106, 121, 122.
 Townships, 49.
 Trade, 20-22, 27, 68-70.
 Treaties (Indian) 15, 33, 47-
 49, 59-61.
 Treaty with England, 111.

 Trevilian's Station, 275.
 Trezevant, Lewis, 176.
 Trott, Nicholas, 6.
 Tufts, Simon, 89.
 Tulifny Bridge, 112.
 Tupper, James, 229.
 Turpentine, 49.
 Tuscaroras, 33-35.
 Twenty-Fifth Regiment, 280.
 Twenty-First Regiment, 280.
 Twenty-Fourth Regiment, 258,
 260.
 Twenty-Seventh Regiment, 280.
 Twiggs, Colonel, 142, 143.
 Tyger River, 65, 143.
 Tyler, President, 200.

 Union, South Carolina joins the,
 290.
 County, 141-143, 147.
 United States, 160.
 Union, United States Military
 Academy, 196.
 University of Oxford, 92, 154,
 164.
 of South Carolina, 302.

 Vice-president, First, 91.
 Virginia, 10, 38, 40, 126, 141,
 142, 223, 224, 239, 250, 255.
 Vera Cruz, 206.

 Wadboo Bridge, 135.
 Waddel, Moses, 189, 190.
 Waddel's Academy, 179, 180,
 184, 190.
 Wallace, William H., 256.
 Wando River, 30.
 Wappoo Creek, 54-56.

- War of 1812, 216.
War Ships, British, 88, 89, 96-99.
Wardlaw, Francis Hugh, 219.
Washington, 193, 196, 198, 200, 201, 224, 263, 270.
Washington, George, 87, 96, 111, 112, 115, 116, 153, 158, 161-167, 171, 196.
William, 148, 159, 163.
Washington Light Infantry, 171.
Square, 79.
Wateree River, 12.
Waties, Thomas, 176.
Watson (British officer), 135, 136.
Waxhaws, 64, 118-120, 144.
Webster, Daniel, 172, 177, 186-188, 202, 204.
Welsh, 51, 128.
Welsh Neck, 51.
Wemyss, Major, 132, 143.
West, Joseph, 8, 11, 12, 16.
West Indies, 21, 22, 31, 54, 55.
West Point, 196, 254.
Westoes, 15.
Westminster School, 92, 154, 164.
Weyman, Edward, 85.
Whitestone, Henry, 95.
Wiboo Swamp, 136.
Wilderness, The, 242, 249, 252, 274.
Wilds, Samuel, 176.
Williams, David R., 171, 176.
James, 105, 137, 138, 141.
Williamsburg, 250, 251.
Williamsburg Township, 50, 51.
Williamson, Andrew, 105, 106, 107.
William, 86.
Williamson's Plantation, 122.
Wilmington, 281.
Windmill Point, 31.
Winyah, 12.
Winn, Colonel, 142, 143, 150, 157.
Winnsboro, 142-144.
Winthrop College, 305.
Witherspoon, John, 50.
Witherspoon's Ferry, 136.
Wofford College, 304.
Woodlands, 284, 286.
Woodward, Dr. Henry, 15.
Worley, Richard, 43.
Yates, Lieutenant-Colonel, 226.
Yale College, 190, 192.
Yeamans, Sir John, 11, 12.
Yemassee, 12, 35-38, 45.
York County, 122, 124, 137, 139, 141.
Yorktown, 111, 116, 117, 153.

JAN 7 1945

